

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1 **Carryover Dallas amendment = It has been a Dallas amendment previously**
2 **Carryover Dallas amendment * = June 13, 2022 amendment**
3 **New Dallas amendment**

4 **Carryover Dallas / COG amendment = item includes combination of Dallas and COG**
5 **amendments**

6 **New Dallas / COG amendment = item includes combination of Dallas and COG amendments**

7 **Carryover COG amendment**

8 **Carryover COG Amendment, updated with new COG amendment**

9 **New COG amendment**

10 **Sections including **New** – This does not mean the item is a new addition to the Code.**
11 **New amendments inserted in codes were not underlined and are underlined in this Draft.**

12

13

14

ORDINANCE NO. _____

15

An ordinance amending Chapter 53, “Dallas Building Code,” of the Dallas City Code, as amended;

16

adopting with certain changes the 2021 Edition of the International Building Code of the

17

International Code Council, Inc.; regulating the construction, enlargement, alteration, repair,

18

demolition, use, and maintenance of construction work in the city; providing a penalty not to

19

exceed \$2,000; providing a saving clause; providing a severability clause; and providing an

20

effective date.

21

BE IT ORDAINED BY THE CITY COUNCIL OF THE CITY OF DALLAS:

22

23

SECTION 1. That Chapter 53, “Dallas Building Code,” of the Dallas City Code, as

24

amended, is amended by adopting the 2021 Edition of the International Building Code of the

25

International Code Council, Inc. (which is attached as Exhibit A and made a part of this ordinance),

26

with the following amendments:

27

1. Page xix, “Legislation,” is deleted.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

69 Psychiatric centers

70 Sedation dentistry

71 Surgery centers

72

73 **Carryover COG Amendment**

74 **ASSISTED LIVING FACILITY.** A building or part thereof housing persons, on a 24-hour basis,
75 who because of age, mental disability or other reasons, live in a supervised residential environment
76 which provides personal care services. The occupants are capable of responding to an emergency
77 situation without physical assistance from staff.

78

79 **Carryover Dallas Amendment ***

80 **BUILDING SITE.** A site created in one of the ways as required by Section 51A-4.601 of the
81 Dallas Development Code.

82

83 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

84 **CODE OFFICIAL.** The *building official*.

85

86 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

87 **CONVENIENCE STAIRS.** Private circular *stairs*, other than a required *exit*, within a single
88 tenant space and complying with Section 1011.9, Exception 2. Other *stairs* may also be considered
89 convenience stairs if they are not required as *exits* and comply with all other applicable provisions
90 of this code.

91

92 **New Dallas amendment**

93 **ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV).** An automotive-type vehicle for on-road use, such as passenger
94 automobiles, buses, trucks, vans, neighborhood electric vehicles, and electric motorcycles,
95 primarily powered by an electric motor that draws current from a building electrical service,
96 EVSE, a rechargeable storage battery, a fuel cell, a photovoltaic array, or another source of
97 electric current.

98

99 **New Dallas amendment**

100 **ELECTRIC VEHICLE SUPPLY EQUIPMENT (EVSE).** The conductors, including the
101 ungrounded, grounded, and equipment grounding conductors, and the Electric Vehicle connectors,
102 attachment plugs, and all other fittings, devices, power outlets, or apparatus installed specifically for the
103 purpose of transferring energy between the premises wiring and the Electric Vehicle.

104

105 **New Dallas amendment**

106 **EV CAPABLE SPACE.** Electrical panel capacity and space to support a minimum 40-ampere,
107 208/240-volt branch circuit for each EV parking space, and the installation of raceways, both
108 underground and surface mounted, to support the *EVSE*.

109 **New Dallas amendment**

110 **EV READY SPACE.** A designated parking space which is provided with one 40-ampere,
111 208/240-volt dedicated branch circuit for EVSE servicing *Electric Vehicles*. The circuit shall terminate
112 in a suitable termination point such as a receptacle, junction box, or an *EVSE*, and be located in close
113 proximity to the proposed location of the EV parking spaces. The circuit shall have no other

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

114 outlets. The service panel shall include an over-current protective device and provide sufficient
115 capacity and space to accommodate the circuit and over-current protective device and be located
116 in close proximity to the proposed location of the EV parking spaces.

117

118 **Carryover Dallas amendment ***

119 **EXISTING BUILDING.** An existing building as defined in the *Dallas Existing Building Code*
120 and buildings previously occupied as described in Section 101.4 of the *Dallas Existing Building*
121 *Code.*

122

123 **Carryover Dallas amendment ***

124 **EXISTING STRUCTURE.** An existing building as defined in the *Dallas Existing Building*
125

126

126 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

127 **EXPOSURE, (Fire).** The surrounding location at a fire incident that may be vulnerable to the fire
128 itself. It includes effects from flames, radiant heat flux, convection currents, flying brands, runoff,
129 or exposure to the harmful effects of combustion gases or smoke. The size and range of a fire
130 exposure depends on the severity of the fire causing the exposure.

131

132 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

133 **EXPOSURE PROTECTION.** A fire protection measure afforded to locations vulnerable to
134 adjacent fire hazards (radiant heat, convection currents, flying brands, explosion effects or
135 exposure to the harmful effects of combustion gases). Exposure protection may be in the form of
136 active (water sprays) or passive (separation distances, fireproofing) fire protection measures. The
137 term fire-resistive is the preferred term in the construction codes. A properly installed and
138 approved fire-resistive assembly may always be considered to provide exposure protection but all
139 types of exposure protection are not equivalent to a fire-resistive assembly.

140

141 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

142 **[BF] EXTERIOR WALL COVERING.** A material or assembly of materials applied on the
143 exterior side of *exterior walls* for the purpose of providing a weather-resisting barrier, insulation
144 or for aesthetics, including but not limited to, *veneers*, siding, *exterior insulation and finish*
145 *systems*, architectural *trim* and embellishments such as *cornices*, soffits, facias, gutters and leaders.
146 For the purpose of Chapter 14, exterior wall coverings of Group R means the surfaces of walls and
147 ceilings that are above, below, alongside or adjacent to exterior exitways, exterior stairs or exterior
148 balconies. Except for dwellings that are detached and freestanding, exterior wall covering finish
149 requirements apply to all surfaces within 10 feet (3048 mm), measured vertically or horizontally
150 in any direction of any exterior exitway, exterior stair or exterior balcony. Group R railings and
151 balustrades are included in this definition.

152

153 **Carryover Dallas amendment ***

155 **FIRE AREA, NONSPRINKLER BUILDING.** The aggregate floor area of all stories
156 enclosed and bounded by *fire walls* or *exterior walls* of a building. Areas of the building
157 excluding area increases for the automatic fire sprinkler system. Areas of the building not
158 provided with surrounding *walls* must be included in the fire area if such areas are included

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

159 within the horizontal projection of the roof or floor next above.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

160 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

161 **[BF] FIRE AREA, OCCUPANCY.** The aggregate floor area enclosed and bounded by *fire*
162 *walls, fire barriers, exterior walls or horizontal assemblies* of a building. Areas of the building
163 not provided with surrounding walls shall be included in the fire area if such areas are included
164 within the horizontal projection of the roof or floor next above.

166 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

167 **FIREPROOF.** Common trade name for materials used to provide resistance to a fire exposure.
168 Essentially nothing is fireproof, but some materials are resistant to the effects of a fire (heat, flame,
169 etc.) for limited periods. Independent testing agencies such as UL and NIST test submitted
170 materials for a standard fire test exposure for fireproof ratings. NFPA recommends the term fire
171 resistive in place of fireproof.

173 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

174 **FIRE WATCH.** A temporary measure intended to ensure continuous and systematic surveillance
175 of a building or portion thereof by one or more qualified standby personnel when required by the
176 fire chief, for the purposes of identifying and controlling fire hazards, detecting early signs of
177 unwanted fire, raising an alarm of fire and notifying the fire department.

179 **Carryover Dallas / COG amendment**

180 **[BG] HIGH-RISE BUILDING.** A building [~~with an occupied floor~~] having floors used for
181 human occupancy located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department
182 vehicle access.

184 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

185 **[A] HISTORIC BUILDINGS.** Buildings that are designated as historic as defined in the *Dallas*
186 *Existing Building Code*. [~~Any building or structure that is one or more of the following:~~

- 187 1. ~~Listed or certified as eligible for listing by the State Historic preservation Officer or the~~
188 ~~Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places, in the National Register of Historic~~
189 ~~Places.~~
- 190 2. ~~Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.~~
- 191 3. ~~Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register, state designated or locally~~
192 ~~designated historic district.]~~

194 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

195 **MULTIPLE BUILDING TOWNHOUSE.** See *Townhouse*.

197 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

198 **[BG] OCCUPIABLE SPACE.** A room or enclosed space designed for human occupancy in
199 which individuals congregate for amusement, educational or similar purposes or in which
200 occupants are engaged at labor, and which is equipped with *means of egress* and light and
201 *ventilation* facilities meeting the requirements of this code. Any space that could be assumed to

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

202 be occupiable is not exempt from the requirements of this code by designing the space without a
203 means of egress, light or ventilation.

204 **Carryover COG Amendment, updated with new COG amendment**

206 **REPAIR GARAGE.** A building, structure or portion thereof used for servicing or repairing motor
207 vehicles. This occupancy shall also include garages involved in minor repair, modification and
208 servicing of motor vehicles for items such as lube changes, inspections, windshield repair or
209 replacement, shocks, minor part replacement and other such minor repairs.

210 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

212 **SINGLE BUILDING TOWNHOUSE.** A multiple dwelling unit located on a commercial
213 dwelling site with more than two units between exterior wall or fire walls complying with Section
214 706 in which each unit extends from foundation to roof and with a yard or public way on not less
215 than two sides.

216 **Carryover COG Amendment, updated with new COG amendment**

218 **[BS] SPECIAL INSPECTOR.** A qualified person employed or retained by an *approved* agency
219 who shall prove to the satisfaction of the responsible registered design professional of record and
220 [approved by] the building official as having the competence necessary to inspect a particular type
221 of construction requiring special inspection.

222 **Carryover COG Amendment**

224 **STANDBY PERSONNEL.** Qualified fire service personnel, approved by the fire chief. When
225 utilized, the number required shall be as directed by the fire chief.

226 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

228 **TOWNHOME.** A dwelling located on a single-family or duplex dwelling site and constructed in
229 a group of abutting structures separated by property lines with each dwelling extending from its
230 foundation to its roof and with a yard or public way on at least two sides.

231 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

233 **[A] TOWNHOUSE.** A multiple [~~single-family~~] dwelling unit located on a commercial dwelling
234 site and constructed with a maximum [~~in a group~~] of two [~~three or more attached~~] units located
235 between exterior walls or fire walls complying with Section 706 of the Dallas Building Code in
236 which each unit extends from foundation to roof and with a yard or public way on not less than
237 two sides.

238 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

240 **TYPE C UNIT, FHA.** A dwelling unit designed and constructed to be adaptable in accordance
241 with the Fair Housing Act Design Manual—1996 (updated 1998)

242 **CHAPTER 3**

243 **OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

246 **5. Paragraph 303.1.3, “Associated with Group E Occupancies,” of Subsection**
247 **303.1, “Assembly Group A,” of Section 303, “Assembly Group A,” of Chapter 3, “Use and**
248 **Occupancy Classification,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as**
249 **follows: [Carryover COG Amendment](#)**

250
251 **“303.1.3 Associated with Group E occupancies.** A room or space used for assembly
252 purposes that is associated with a Group E occupancy is not considered a separate occupancy
253 ~~except~~ when applying the assembly requirements of Chapters 10 and 11.”
254

255 **6. Subsection 304.1, “Business Group B,” of Section 304, “Business Group B,” of**
256 **Chapter 3, “Use and Occupancy Classification,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
257 **amended to read as follows: [Carryover COG Amendment](#)**

258
259 **“304.1 Business Group B.** Business Group B occupancy includes, among others, the use of a
260 building or structure, or a portion thereof, for office, professional or service-type transactions,
261 including storage of records and accounts. Business occupancies shall include, but not be limited
262 to, the following:

263 Airport traffic control towers

264 *Ambulatory care facilities*

265 Animal hospitals, kennels and pounds

266 Banks

267 Barber and beauty shops

268 Car wash

269 Civic administration

270 *Clinic, outpatient*

271 Dry cleaning and laundries: pick-up and delivery stations and self-service

272 Educational occupancies for students above the 12th grade

273 Electronic data processing

274 Fire stations

275 Food processing establishments and commercial kitchens not associated with restaurants,
276 cafeterias, and similar dining facilities not more than 2,500 square feet (232 m²) in area.

277 Laboratories: testing and research

278 Motor vehicle showrooms

279 Police stations with detention facilities for five or less

280 Post offices

281 Print shops

282 Professional services (architects, attorneys, dentists, physicians, engineers, etc.)

283 Radio and television stations

284 Telephone exchanges

285 Training and skill development not in a school or academic program (this shall include, but
286 not be limited to, tutoring centers, martial arts studios, gymnastics and similar uses regardless
287 of the ages served, and where not classified as a Group A occupancy).”
288
289

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

290 7. Subsection [F] 307.1, “High-Hazard Group H.” of Section 307, “High-Hazard
291 Group H,” of Chapter 3, “Use and Occupancy Classification,” of the 2021 International
292 Building Code is amended to read as follows:

293 **Carryover Dallas/COG Amendments**

294 “[F] 307.1 High-hazard Group H. High-hazard Group H occupancy includes, among others, the
295 use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, that involves the manufacturing, processing,
296 generation or storage of materials that constitute a physical or health hazard in quantities in excess
297 of those allowed in *control areas* complying with Section 414, based on the maximum allowable
298 quantity limits for *control areas* set for in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2). Hazardous
299 occupancies are classified in Groups H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 and shall be in accordance with
300 this section, the requirements of Section 415 and the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code*. Hazardous
301 materials stored, or used on top of roofs or canopies shall be classified as outdoor storage or use and
302 shall comply with the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
303

304 [F] 307.1.1 Uses other than Group H. An occupancy that stores, uses or handles hazardous
305 materials as described in one or more of the following items shall not be classified as Group
306 H, but shall be classified as the occupancy that it most nearly resembles.
307

- 308 1. Buildings and structure occupied for the application of flammable finishes, provided
309 that such buildings or areas conform to the requirements of Section 416 of the Dallas
310 [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
- 311 2. Wholesale and retail sales and storage of flammable and combustible liquids in
312 mercantile occupancies conforming to the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
- 313 3. Closed piping system containing flammable or combustible liquids or gases utilized for
314 the operation of machinery or equipment.
- 315 4. Cleaning establishments that utilize combustible liquid solvents having a flash point of
316 140°F (60°C) or higher in closed systems employing equipment *listed* by an *approved*
317 testing agency, provided that this occupancy is separated from all other areas of the
318 building by 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 1-hour
319 *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. See also
320 Chapter 12 of the Dallas Fire Code. **Carryover COG Amendment**
- 321 5. Cleaning establishments that utilize a liquid solvent having a flash point at or above
322 200°F (93°C).
- 323 6. Liquor stores and distributors without bulk storage.
- 324 7. Refrigeration systems.
- 325 8. The storage or utilization of materials for agricultural purposes on the premises.
- 326 9. Stationary storage battery systems installed in accordance with the Dallas
327 [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
- 328 10. *Corrosive* personal or household products in their original packaging used in retail
329 display.
- 330 11. Commonly used *corrosive* building materials.
- 331 12. Buildings and structures occupied for *aerosol product* storage, aerosol cooking spray
332 products or plastic aerosol 3 products shall be classified as Group S-1, provided that
333 such buildings conform to the requirements of the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 334 13. Display and storage of nonflammable solid and nonflammable or noncombustible
335 liquid hazardous materials in quantities not exceeding the maximum allowable quantity
336 per *control area* in Group M or S occupancies complying with Section 414.2.5.
337 14. The storage of black powder, smokeless propellant and small arms primers in Groups
338 M and R-3 and special industrial explosive devices in Groups B, F, M and S, provided
339 such storage conforms to the quantity limits and requirements prescribed in the Dallas
340 [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
341 15. Stationary fuel cell power systems installed in accordance with the Dallas
342 [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
343 16. Capacitor energy storage systems in accordance with the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire*
344 *Code*.
345 17. Group B higher education laboratory occupancies complying with Section 428 and
346 Chapter 38 of the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
347 18. Distilling or brewing of beverages conforming to the requirements of the [~~International~~]
348 Dallas *Fire Code*.
349 19. The storage of beer, distilled spirits and wines in barrels and casks conforming to the
350 requirements of the [~~International~~] Dallas *Fire Code*.
351

352 **8. Subsection [F] 307.2, “Hazardous materials.” of Section 307, “High-Hazard**
353 **Group H,” of Chapter 3, “Use and Occupancy Classification,” of the 2021 International**
354 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

355
356 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

357 **[F] 307.2 Hazardous materials.** Hazardous materials in any quantity shall conform to the
358 requirements of this code, including Section 414, and the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.”
359

360 **9. Paragraph 310.4.1, “Care Facilities Within a Dwelling.” of Subsection 310.4,**
361 **“Residential Group R-3,” of Section 310, “Residential Group R,” of Chapter 3, “Use and**
362 **Occupancy Classification,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as**
363 **follows:**

364
365 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

366 **“310.4.1 Care facilities within a dwelling.** Care facilities for five or fewer persons receiving
367 care that are within a single-family dwelling are permitted to comply with the Dallas One- and
368 Two-Family Dwelling [~~International-Residential~~] *Code* provided an *automatic sprinkler*
369 *system* is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 or Section P2904 of the Dallas One-
370 and Two-Family Dwelling [~~International-Residential~~] *Code*.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

371 Exception: A facility equivalent to a *dwelling unit* and which complies with Section
372 903.2.13 may omit the sprinkler system.”
373

374 **10. Paragraph 310.4.2, “Lodging Houses,” of Subsection 310.4, “Residential**
375 **Group R-3,” of Section 310, “Residential Group R,” of Chapter 3, “Use and Occupancy**
376 **Classification,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**
377

378 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

379 **“310.4.2 Lodging houses.** Owner-occupied *lodging houses* with five or fewer *guest rooms*
380 and 10 or fewer total occupants shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with the
381 *Dallas One- and Two-Family Dwelling* [~~*International Residential*~~] *Code* provided an
382 *automatic sprinkler system* is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 or Section P2904
383 of the *Dallas One- and Two-Family Dwelling* [~~*International Residential*~~] *Code.*”
384

385 **CHAPTER 4**

386 **SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE**

387

388 **11. Subsection [F] 402.5, “Automatic Sprinkler System,” of Section 402, “Covered**
389 **Mall and Open Mall Buildings,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use**
390 **and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

391 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

392 **“[F] 402.5 Automatic sprinkler system.** *Covered and open mall buildings* and buildings
393 connected shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with
394 Section 903.3.1.1, which shall comply with all of the following:
395
396

- 397 1. The *automatic sprinkler system* shall be complete and operative throughout occupied space
398 in the *mall building* prior to occupancy of any of the tenant spaces. Unoccupied, but used
399 tenant spaces shall be similarly protected unless provided with *approved* alternative
400 protection. Protection of unoccupied and unused tenant spaces shall be subject to the
401 approval of the *building official* and the *fire marshal*.
- 402 2. Sprinkler protection for the *mall* of a *covered mall building* shall be independent from that
403 provided for tenant spaces or *anchor buildings*.
- 404 3. Sprinkler protection for the tenant spaces of an *open mall building* shall be independent
405 from that provided for *anchor buildings*.
- 406 4. Sprinkler protection shall be provided beneath exterior circulation balconies located
407 adjacent to an *open mall*.
- 408 5. Where tenant spaces are supplied by the same system, they shall be independently
409 controlled.

410 **Exception:** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall not be required in spaces or areas
411 of *open parking garages* separated from the *covered or open mall building* in

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

412 accordance with Section 402.4.2.3 and constructed in accordance with Section
413 406.5.”
414

415 **12. Subsection 403.1, “Applicability,” of Section 403, “High-Rise Buildings,” of**
416 **Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021**
417 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

418
419 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

420 **“403.1 Applicability.** *High-rise buildings* shall comply with Sections 403.2 through 403.6.
421

422 **Exception:** The provisions of Sections 403.2 through 403.6 shall not apply to the following
423 buildings and structures:
424

- 425 1. Airport traffic control towers in accordance with Section 412.2.
426
427 2. *Open parking garages* in accordance with Section 406.5 if the open parking garage is
428 used exclusively for the parking or storage of private passenger motor vehicles or if all
429 other occupancies are located on the ground level tier only.
430
431
432 3. Open air [~~The~~] portions of [~~a~~] buildings containing a Group A-5 occupancy in
433 accordance with Section 303.6. This exception does not apply to enclosed concourses
434 or accessory uses including but not limited to sky boxes, restaurants and similarly
435 enclosed areas.
436
437 4. Special industrial occupancies in accordance with Section 503.1.1.
438
439 5. Buildings containing any one of the following:
440 5.1. A Group H-1 occupancy.
441 5.2. A Group H-2 occupancy in accordance with Section 415.8, 415.9.2, 415.9.3 or
442 426.1.
443 5.3. A Group H-3 occupancy in accordance with Section 415.8.”
444

445 **13. Subsection [F] 403.3, “Automatic Sprinkler System,” of Section 403, “High-**
446 **Rise Buildings,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and**
447 **Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

448 **Carryover COG amendment & updated per Fire Code Amendments**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

449 “[F] **403.3 Automatic sprinkler system.** Buildings and structures shall be equipped throughout
450 with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and a secondary water
451 supply where required by Section 403.3.3.

452
453 ~~**Exception:** An automatic sprinkler system shall not be required in spaces or areas of
454 telecommunications equipment buildings used exclusively for telecommunications equipment,
455 associated electrical power distribution equipment, batteries and standby engines, provided
456 that those spaces or areas are equipped throughout with an automatic fire detection system in
457 accordance with Section 907.2 and are separated from the remainder of the building by not less
458 than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or not less than 2-hour
459 *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.]~~
460

461 [F] **403.3.1 Number of sprinkler risers and system design.** Each sprinkler system zone in
462 buildings that are more than 420 feet (128 000 mm) in *building height* shall be supplied by no
463 fewer than two risers. Each riser shall supply sprinklers on alternate floors. If more than two
464 risers are provided for a zone, sprinklers on adjacent floors shall not be supplied from the same
465 riser.

466
467 [F] **403.3.1.1 Riser location.** Sprinkler risers shall be placed in *interior exit stairways* and
468 ramps that are remotely located in accordance with Section 1007.1.

469
470 [F] **403.3.2 Water supply to required fire pumps.** In all buildings that are more than 120
471 feet (36.5 m) [~~420 feet (128 m)~~] in *building height*, and ~~buildings of Type IVA and IVB~~
472 ~~construction that are more than 120 feet (35 576 mm) in *building height*,~~ required fire pumps
473 shall be supplied by connections to no fewer than two water mains located in different streets.
474 Separate supply piping shall be provided between each connection to the water main and the
475 pumps. Each connection and the supply piping between the connection and the pumps shall
476 be sized to supply the flow and pressure required for the pumps to operate.

477
478 **Exception:** Two connections to the same main shall be permitted provided the main is
479 valved such that an interruption can be isolated so that the water supply will continue
480 without interruption through no fewer than one of the connections. The valves shall be
481 placed a distance apart not less than one half of the length of the diagonal dimension of the
482 lot or area to be served, measured in a straight line between the connections.
483

484 [F] **403.3.3 Secondary water supply.** An automatic secondary on-site water supply having a
485 capacity not less than the hydraulically calculated sprinkler demand, including the hose stream
486 requirement, shall be provided for *high-rise buildings* assigned to *Seismic Design Category C,*
487 *D, E or F* as determined by Section 1613. An additional fire pump shall not be required for the
488 secondary water supply unless needed to provide the minimum design intake pressure at the
489 suction side of the fire pump supplying the *automatic sprinkler system*. The secondary water
490 supply shall have a duration of not less than 30 minutes as determined by the occupancy hazard
491 classification in accordance with NFPA 13.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

492 [F] 403.3.4 Fire pump room. Fire pumps shall be located in rooms protected in accordance
493 with Section 913.2.1.”

494

495 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

496 14. Subparagraph 403.5.3.1, “Stairway Communication System,” of Paragraph
497 403.5.3, “Stairway Door Operation,” of Subsection 403.5, “Means of Egress and
498 Evacuation,” of Section 403, “High-Rise Buildings,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed
499 Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building Code is
500 deleted.

501 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

502 15. Paragraph 403.5.4, “Smokeproof Enclosures,” of Subsection 403.5, “Means of
503 Egress and Evacuation,” of Section 403, “High-Rise Buildings,” of Chapter 4, “Special
504 Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building
505 Code is amended to read as follows:

506 “403.5.4 Smokeproof enclosures. Every required *interior exit stairway* serving floors more
507 than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access shall be a
508 *smokeproof enclosure* in accordance with Sections 909.20 and 1023.12. In any building that
509 includes a *scissor stair* as described in Exception 3 of Section 1007.1.1, both exit stairs of the
510 dual enclosure structure must be a *smokeproof enclosure* or pressurized stairway in accordance
511 with Section 909.20.

512

513 **Exception:** *Smokeproof enclosures* or pressurized *stairs* shall not be required in non-
514 underground (see Section 405) buildings protected throughout by an approved *automatic*
515 *sprinkler system*. This exception does not apply to a *building* in which *scissor stairs* are
516 used as two exits in accordance with Section 1007.1.1. Any *smokeproof enclosures* or
517 pressurized *stairs* installed as a substitute for a requirement, a reduction of a requirement
518 or an increase in the limits of other requirements of this code is considered a required
519 system.”

520

521 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

522 16. Subsection [F] 404.3, “Automatic Sprinkler Protection,” of Section 404,
523 “Atriums,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of
524 the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

525 “[F] 404.3 Automatic sprinkler protection. An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be
526 installed throughout the entire building.
527

528 **Exception[s]:**

529 [~~1. That area of a building adjacent to or above the atrium need not be sprinklered provided
530 that portion of the building is separated from the atrium portion by not less than 2-hour
531 fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies
532 constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.~~

534 ~~2.] Where the ceiling of the atrium is more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above the floor,
535 sprinkler protection at the ceiling of the atrium is not required.”~~

536

537 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

538 **17. Subsection 404.6, “Enclosure of Atriums,” of Section 404, “Atriums,” of**

539 **Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021**

540 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

541 **“404.6 Enclosure of atriums.** Atrium spaces shall be separated from adjacent spaces by a 1-hour
542 fire barrier constructed in accordance with Section 707 or a horizontal assembly constructed in
543 accordance with Section 711, or both.
544

544

545 **Exceptions:**

546

547 1. A fire barrier is not required where a glass wall forming a smoke partition is provided.
548 The glass wall shall comply with all of the following:
549

549

550 1.1. Automatic sprinklers are provided along both sides of the separation wall and
551 doors, or on the room side only if there is not a walkway on the atrium side.
552 The sprinklers shall be located between 4 inches and 12 inches (102 mm and
553 305 mm) away from the glass and at intervals along the glass not greater than
554 6 feet (1829 mm). The sprinkler system shall be designed so that the entire
555 surface of the glass is wet upon activation of the sprinkler system without
556 obstruction;
557

557

558 1.2. The glass wall shall be installed in a gasketed frame in a manner that the framing
559 system deflects without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler
560 system operates; and

561 1.3. Where glass doors are provided in the glass wall, they shall be either self-
562 closing or automatic-closing.
563

563

564 2. A fire barrier is not required where a glass-block wall assembly complying with
565 Section 2110 and having a ¾-hour fire protection rating is provided.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

566 3. *A fire barrier* is not required between the *atrium* and the adjoining spaces of up to three
567 floors of the *atrium* provided that such spaces are accounted for in the design of the
568 smoke control system and if the height of the smoke layer interface is maintained above
569 the minimum 6 feet as required in Section 909.8.1. Smoke control analysis must
570 include all relevant information including but not limited to the design fire, height of
571 smoke layer interface, air handler capacity in cubic feet per minute (CFM) and *atrium*
572 volume of air changes per hour (ACH) using the methods of NFPA 92.
573

574 3.1 In other than Group R occupancies, other approaches to smoke management with
575 equivalent results may be considered with the approval of the *building official*
576 and the fire code official.

577 3.2 In Group R occupancies, a smoke reservoir enclosed by glass walls complying
578 with Section 404.6, Exception 1 is required to the extent that the smoke layer
579 interface drops below 6 feet in height as required in Section 909.8.1.”
580

581 4. A *fire barrier* is not required between the *atrium* and the adjoining spaces where the
582 atrium is not required to be provided with a smoke control system.

583
584 5. A *horizontal assembly* is not required between the atrium and openings for escalators
585 complying with Section 712.1.3.

586
587 6. A *horizontal assembly* is not required between the *atrium* and openings for *exit access*
588 *stairways* and ramps complying with Item 4 of Section 1019.3
589

590 New COG amendment

591 18. Subsection 404.10, “Exit access in an Atrium,” of Section 404, “Atriums,” of

592 Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021

593 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

594 “404.10 Exit stairways in an atrium. Where an *Atrium* contains an ~~interior~~ *exit access stairway*
595 all the following shall be met:

596
597 1. The entry to the exit stairway is the edge of the closest riser of the exit stairway.

598
599 2. The entry of the exit stairway shall have access from a minimum of two directions.

600
601 3. The distance between the entire to an exit stairway in an atrium and the entrance to a
602 minimum of one exit stairway enclosed in accordance with Section 1023.2 shall comply
603 with the separation required by Section 1007.1.1.

604
605 4. Exit access travel distance shall be measured to the closest riser of the exit stairway.
606

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 607
5. Not more than 50 percent of the exit stairways shall be located in the same atrium.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

608 Carryover COG Amendment

609 19. Paragraph 406.3.3, “Carports,” of Subsection 406.3, “Private Garages and
610 Carports,” of Section 406, “Motor-Vehicle-Related Occupancies,” of Chapter 4, “Special
611 Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building
612 Code is amended to read as follows:

613 “**406.3.3 Carports.** Carports shall be open on not fewer than two sides. Carports open on fewer
614 than two sides shall be considered to be a garage and shall comply with the requirements for
615 *private garages*.

616
617 **406.3.3.1 Carport separation.** A separation is not required between a Group R-3 and U
618 carport, provided the carport is entirely open on two or more sides and there are not
619 enclosed areas above.

620
621 A fire separation is not required between a Group R-2 and U carport provided that the
622 carport is entirely open on all sides and that the distance between the two is at least 10 feet
623 (3048 mm).”
624

625 Carryover Dallas Amendment*

626 20. Paragraph 406.5.2, “Openings,” of Subsection 406.5, “Open Parking
627 Garages,” of Section 406, “Motor-Vehicle-Related Occupancies,” of Subchapter 4, “Special
628 Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building
629 Code is amended to read as follows:

630 “**406.5.2 Openings.** For natural *ventilation* purposes, the exterior side of the structure shall
631 have uniformly distributed openings on two or more sides. The area of such openings in
632 *exterior walls* on a tier shall not be less than 20 percent of the total perimeter wall area of each
633 tier. The aggregate length of the openings considered to be providing natural *ventilation* shall
634 not be less than 40 percent of the perimeter of the tier. Interior walls shall not be less than 20
635 percent open with uniformly distributed openings. Use of screens are permissible if
636 calculations are provided that demonstrate no loss in minimum area of openings.
637

638 **Exception:** Openings are not to be distributed over 40 percent of the building perimeter
639 where the required openings are uniformly distributed over two opposing sides of the
640 buildings.

641
642 **406.5.2.1 Openings below grade.** Where openings below grade provide required natural
643 *ventilation*, the outside horizontal clear space shall be one and one-half times the depth of

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

644 the opening. The width of the horizontal clear space shall be maintained from grade down
645 to the bottom of the lowest required opening.”

647 **Carryover Dallas amendment**

648 **21. Paragraph 406.5.5, “Area and Height Increases,” of Subsection 406.5, “Open**
649 **Parking Garages,” of Section 406, “Motor-Vehicle-Related Occupancies,” of Chapter 4,**
650 **“Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International**
651 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

652
653 **“406.5.5 Area and height increases.** The allowable area and height of *open parking garages*
654 shall be increased in accordance with the provisions of this section. Garages with sides open
655 on three-fourths of the building’s perimeter are permitted to be increased by 25 percent in area
656 and one tier in height. Garages with sides open around the entire building’s perimeter are
657 permitted to be increased by 50 percent in area and one tier in height. For a side to be
658 considered open under the above provisions, the total area of openings along the side shall not
659 be less than 50 percent of the interior area of the side at each tier and such openings shall be
660 equally distributed along the length of the tier. For purposes of calculating the interior area of
661 the side, the height shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm).

662
663 Allowable tier areas in Table 406.5.4 shall be increased for *open parking garages*
664 constructed to heights less than the table maximum. The gross tier area of the garage shall not
665 exceed that permitted for the higher structure. No fewer than three sides of each such larger
666 tier shall have continuous horizontal openings not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in clear height
667 extending for not less than 80 percent of the length of the sides and no part of such larger tier
668 shall be more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) horizontally from such an opening. In addition, each
669 such opening shall face a street or *yard* with access to a street with a width of not less than 30
670 feet (9144 mm) for the full length of the opening, and *standpipes* shall be provided in each
671 such tier.

672
673 *Open parking garages* of Type II construction, with all sides open, shall be unlimited in
674 allowable area where the *building height* does not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm). For a side to
675 be considered open, the total area of openings along the side shall not be less than 50 percent
676 of the interior area of the side at each tier and such openings shall be equally distributed along
677 the length of the tier. For purposes of calculating the interior area of the side, the height shall
678 not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm). All portions of tiers shall be within 200 feet (60 960 mm)
679 horizontally from such openings or other natural *ventilation* openings as defined in Section
680 406.5.2. These openings shall be permitted to be provided in *courts* with a minimum dimension
681 of 20 feet (6096 mm) for the full width of the openings.

682
683 All portions of the open parking garage must be within 130 feet of a standpipe to satisfy Fire
684 Department access requirements.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

685 **Exception:** Where a building is equipped throughout with an *approved automatic*
686 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, standpipes may be omitted in
687 accordance with Section 905.”
688

689 **22. Subsection 406.8, “Repair Garages,” of Section 406, “Motor-Vehicle-Related**
690 **Occupancies,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,”**
691 **of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

692
693 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

694 **“406.8 Repair garages.** Repair garages shall be constructed in accordance with the *Dallas*
695 *[International] Fire Code* and Sections 406.2 and 406.8. This occupancy shall include uses as
696 defined in Section 202. This occupancy shall not include motor fuel-dispensing facilities, as
697 regulated in Section 406.7.

698
699 **406.8.1 Ventilation.** Repair garages shall be mechanically ventilated in accordance with the
700 *Dallas [International] Mechanical Code*. The *ventilation* system shall be controlled at the
701 entrance to the garage.

702
703 **[F] 406.8.2 Gas detection system.** Repair garages used for the repair of vehicles fueled by
704 non-odorized gases including but not limited to hydrogen and non-odorized LNG, shall be
705 provided with a gas detection system that complies with Section 916. The gas detection system
706 shall be designed to detect leakage of non-odorized gaseous fuel. Where lubrication or chassis
707 service pits are provided in garages used for repairing non-odorized LNG-fueled vehicles, gas
708 sensors shall be provided in such pits.

709
710 **[F] 406.8.2.1 System activation.** Activation of gas detection alarm shall result in all of
711 the following:

- 712 1. Initiation of distinct audible and visual alarm signals in the repair garage, where the
713 ventilation system is interlocked with gas detection.
714 2. Deactivation of all heating systems located in the repair garage.
715 3. Activation of the mechanical ventilation system, where the system is interlocked
716 with gas detection.

717
718 **[F] 406.8.2.2 Failure of the gas detection system.** Failure of the gas detection system
719 shall automatically deactivate the heating system, activate the mechanical ventilation
720 system where the system is interlocked with the *gas detection system*, and cause a trouble
721 signal to sound in an approved location.

722
723 **[F] 406.8.3 Automatic sprinkler system.** A repair garage shall be equipped with an *automatic*
724 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.2.9.1.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

725 Carryover Dallas Amendment

726 23. Subsection [F] 411.2, “Automatic Sprinkler System,” of Section 411, “Special
727 Amusement Buildings,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and
728 Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

729 “[F] 411.2 Automatic sprinkler system. Buildings containing *special amusement areas* shall be
730 equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
731 Where the *special amusement area* is temporary, the sprinkler water supply shall be of an *approved*
732 *temporary means*.

733
734 **Exception:** *Automatic sprinklers are not required where the total floor area of a temporary*
735 *special amusement area is less than 7,500 [1,000] square feet (690 [93] m²), ~~and~~ the exit*
736 *access travel distance from any point to an exit is less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) and the*
737 *temporary use does not exceed 30 days in any 12-month period.”*
738

739 Carryover Dallas Amendment

740 24. Subsection 420.2, “Separation Walls,” of Section 420, “Groups I-1, R-1, R-2,
741 R-3 and R-4,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,”
742 of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

743 “420.2 Separation walls. Walls separating *dwelling units* in the same building, walls separating
744 *sleeping units* in the same building and walls separating *dwelling* or *sleeping units* from other
745 occupancies contiguous to them in the same building shall be constructed as *fire partitions* in
746 accordance with Section 708. Walls separating *dwelling* or *sleeping units* from portions of the
747 same occupancy contiguous to them, but not part of the same *dwelling* or *sleeping units*, shall be
748 constructed as *fire partitions* in accordance with Section 708.”
749

750 Carryover Dallas Amendment

751 25. Subsection 420.3, “Horizontal Separation,” of Section 420, “Groups I-1, R-1,
752 R-2, R-3 and R-4,” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and
753 Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

754 “420.3 Horizontal separation. Floor assemblies separating *dwelling units* in the same buildings,
755 floor assemblies separating *sleeping units* in the same building and floor assemblies separating
756 *dwelling* or *sleeping units* from other occupancies contiguous to them in the same building shall
757 be constructed as *horizontal assemblies* in accordance with Section 711. Floor assemblies
758 separating *dwelling* or *sleeping units* from portions of the same occupancy contiguous to them, but
759 not part of the same *dwelling* or *sleeping units*, shall be constructed as horizontal assemblies in
760 accordance with Section 711.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

New COG Amendment

761
762 **26. Subsection 423.5.1, “Required Occupant Capacity,” of Section 423.5, “Group**
763 **E Occupancy” of Section 423 “Storm Shelter” of Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements**
764 **Based on Use and Occupancy,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read**
765 **as follows:**

766 **“423.5.1 Required Occupant capacity.** The required occupant capacity of the *storm shelter* shall
767 include all of the buildings on the site and shall be the ~~greater of the following:~~
768

- 769 1. ~~The~~ *Total occupant load* of the classrooms, vocational rooms and offices in the
770 Group E occupancy.
- 771 2. ~~The~~ *Occupant load* of the largest indoor assembly space that is associated with the
772 group E occupancy.
773

Exceptions:

- 774
775
776 1. Where a new building is being added on an existing Group E site, and where the new
777 building is not of sufficient size to accommodate the required occupant capacity of the
778 *storm shelter* for all of the buildings on the site, the *storm shelter* shall at a minimum
779 accommodate the required occupant capacity for the new building.
780
- 781 2. Where approved by the *building official* the required occupant capacity of the shelter
782 shall be permitted to be reduced by the occupant capacity of any existing *storm shelter*
783 on the site.
784
- 785 3. Where approved by the building official, the actual number of occupants for whom
786 each occupied space, floor or building is designed, although less than those determined
787 by occupant load calculation, shall be permitted to be used in the determination of the
788 required design occupant capacity for the storm shelter.
789

Carryover Dallas Amendment

790
791 **27. Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,” of**
792
793 **the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Section 429, “Aircraft**

794 **Noise Attenuation Requirements,” to read as follows:**

795 **429.1 Definitions.** The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this chapter, and as
796 used elsewhere in this code, have the meanings shown herein.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

797 **A-WEIGHTED SOUND LEVEL.** An A-weighted sound level is a sound level in the 1,000 to
798 6,000 Hz frequency range that is increased by 10 dB if the noise event occurs between 10:00 p.m.
799 and 7:00 a.m. The A-weighted sound level reflects the greater intrusiveness of sounds that the ear
800 perceives as louder compared to other frequencies. “dBA” or “dB(A)” indicate a sound level
801 measurement has been A-weighted.
802

803 **DAY-NIGHT AVERAGE SOUND LEVEL.** The day-night average sound level is the noise
804 exposure in areas around airports (abbreviated as “DNL” in text and “L_{dn}” in equations). DNL is
805 a measure of the average A-weighted sound level of all aircraft flights occurring in a 24-hour
806 period.
807

808 **429.2 Aircraft noise zone.** All land with a DNL noise contour of 65 dBA or greater, as shown on
809 the aircraft noise maps available for review at the Division of Building Inspection, is subject to
810 these regulations. A building that is only partly located within an aircraft noise zone is also subject
811 to these regulations.
812

813 **429.3 Noise insulation.**

814
815 **429.3.1 Certification of plans prior to issuance of building permit.** A registered Texas
816 engineer who has demonstrable knowledge of acoustical engineering shall certify that the plans
817 and specifications comply with the noise insulation standards of Section 429.3.2. The *building*
818 *official* shall not issue a building permit for any *building* within an aircraft noise zone unless
819 the plans and specifications for the *building* meet the noise insulation standards of Section
820 429.3.2.
821

822 **Exception:** The plans and specifications may be prepared and certified by a member of
823 the National Council of Acoustical Consultants or another organization approved by the
824 *building official.*
825

826 **429.3.2 Noise insulation standards.** New *buildings* of the following occupancies shall be
827 constructed with sound insulation or other means to achieve a DNL of 45 dBA or less inside
828 the *building*: Group E occupancies; Group I-1, I-2 and I-4 occupancies; and Group R
829 occupancies. If the cost of modifications to an existing *building* is 75 percent or more of the
830 total assessed improvement value of the site, the *building* shall also meet this standard. Garages
831 and similar accessory buildings that do not include living space are exempt from this
832 requirement.”
833

834 **New Dallas Amendment**

835 **28. Chapter 4, “Special Detailed Requirements Based on Use and Occupancy,”**
836
837 **of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Section 430, “Electric**
838 **Vehicle Charging Facilities,” to read as follows:**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

839 **430.1. Electric Vehicle (EV) charging for new construction.** New construction shall facilitate future
840 installation and use of *Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment (EVSE)* in accordance with the NFPA 70.
841

842 **430.1.1. New commercial buildings.** *EV Ready Spaces* and *EV Capable Spaces* shall be
843 provided in accordance with Table 430.1.1. Where the calculation of percent served results in a
844 fractional parking space, it shall be rounded up to the next whole number. The service panel or
845 sub panel circuit directory shall identify the spaces reserved to support EV charging as “EV Capable”
846 or “EV Ready”. The raceway location shall be permanently and visibly marked as “EV Capable”.
847

848 Where more than one parking facility is provided on a site, electric vehicle ready parking spaces
849 shall be calculated separately for each parking facility. The service panel or subpanel circuit
850 directory shall identify the spaces reserved to support EV charging as “EV-Capable” or “EV-
851 Ready”. The raceway location for *EV-Capable Spaces* shall be permanently and visibly marked
852 as “EV-Capable”.
853

854 **TABLE 430.1.1.**
855 ***EV READY SPACE AND EV CAPABLE SPACE REQUIREMENTS***

Total Number of Parking Spaces	Minimum number of EV Ready Spaces	Minimum number of EV Capable Spaces
1	1	NA
2 – 10	2	NA
11 – 15	2	3
16 – 19	2	4
21 – 25	2	5
26+	2	20% of total parking spaces

856
857 **430.1.2. Identification.** Construction documents shall indicate the raceway termination point and
858 proposed location of future EV spaces and EV chargers. Construction documents shall also provide
859 information on amperage of future *EVSE*, raceway methods, wiring schematics and electrical load
860 calculations to verify that the electrical panel service capacity and electrical system, including any on-
861 site distribution transformers, have sufficient capacity to simultaneously charge all EVs at all required
862 EV spaces at the full rated amperage of the *EVSE*.
863
864

865 **CHAPTER 5**

866 **GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS**

867 **New COG amendment**

868 **29 Section 503.1, “General,” of Section 503, “General Building Height and Area**
869 **limitations,” of Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,” of the 2021 International**
870 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

871 “**503.1 General.** Unless otherwise specifically modified in Chapter 4 and this chapter, *building*
 872 *height*, number of *stories* and *building area* shall not exceed the limits specified in Sections 504
 873 and 506 based on the type of construction as determined by Section 602 and the occupancies as
 874 determined by Section 302 except as modified hereafter. *Building height*, number of *stories* and
 875 *building area* provisions shall be applied independently. For the purposes of determining area
 876 limitations, height limitations and type of construction, each portion of a building separated by
 877 one or more *fire walls* complying with Section 706 shall be considered to be a separate building.
 878 Where a building contains more than one distinct type of construction, the building shall comply
 879 with the most restrictive area, height, and stories, for the lesser type of construction or be separated
 880 by fire walls, except as allowed in Section 510.
 881

882 **503.1.1- Special industrial occupancies.** Buildings and structures designed to house
 883 special industrial processes that require large areas and unusual *building heights* to accommodate
 884 craneways or special machinery and equipment, including, among others, rolling mills; structural
 885 metal fabrication of electric, gas or steam power, shall be exempt from the *building height*, number
 886 of *stories* and *building area* limitations specified in Section 504 and 506.
 887

888 **Carryover Dallas Amendment. Updated with new Types of Construction.**

889 **30 Table 504.4, “Allowable Number of Stories Above Grade Plane,” of Subsection**
 890 **504.4, “Number of Stories,” of Section 504, “Building Height and Number of Stories,” of**
 891 **Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
 892 **is amended to read as follows:**

893 **“TABLE 504.4**
 894 **ALLOWABLE NUMBER OF STORIES ABOVE GRADE PLANE^{a, b}**

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION												
	SEE FOOTNOTS	TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV				TYPE V	
		A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B		HT	A	B
A-1	NS	UL	5	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	2	1
	S	UL	6	4	3	4	3	9	6	4	4	3	2
A-2	NS	UL	11	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	2	1
	S	UL	12	4	3	4	3	18	12	6	4	3	2
A-3	NS	UL	11	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	2	1
	S	UL	12	4	3	4	3	18	12	6	4	3	2
A-4	NS	UL	11	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	2	1
	S	UL	12	4	3	4	3	18	12	6	4	3	2
A-5	NS	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	1	1	1	UL	UL	UL
	S	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL
B	NS	UL	11	5	3	5	3	5	5	5	5	3	2
	S	UL	12	6	4	6	4	18	12	9	6	4	3
E ^{1,2}	NS	UL	5	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	1	1
	S	UL	6	4	3	4	3	9	6	4	4	2	2

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

895

F-1	NS	UL	11	4	2	3	2	3	3	3	4	2	1
	S	UL	12	5	3	4	3	10	7	5	5	3	2
F-2	NS	UL	11	5	3	4	3	5	5	5	5	3	2
	S	UL	12	6	4	5	4	12	8	6	6	4	3
H-1	NS ^{c, d}	1	1	1	1	1	1	NP	NP	NP	1	1	NP
	S							1	1	1			
H-2	NS ^{c, d}	UL	3	2	1	2	1	1	1	1	2	1	1
	S							2	2	2			
H-3	NS ^{c, d}	UL	6	4	2	4	2	3	3	3	4	2	1
	S							4	4	4			
H-4	NS ^{c, d}	UL	7	5	3	5	3	5	5	5	5	3	2
	S	UL	8	6	4	6	4	8	7	6	6	4	3
H-5	NS ^{c, d}	4	4	3	3	3	3	2	2	2	3	3	2
	S							3	3	3			
I-1 Condition 1	NS ^{d, e}	UL	9	4	3	4	3	4	4	4	4	3	2
	S	UL	10	5	4	5	4	10	7	5	5	4	3
I-1 Condition 2	NS ^{d, e}	UL	9	4	3	4	3	3	3	3	4	3	2
	S	UL	10	5				10	6	4			
I-2	NS ^{d, f}	UL	4	2	1	1	NP	NP	NP	NP	1	1	NP
	S	UL	5	3				1	1	1			
I-3	NS ^{d, e}	UL	4	2	1	2	1	2	2	2	2	2	1
	S	UL	5	3	2	3	2	7	5	3	3	3	2
I-4	NS ^{d, g}	UL	5	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	1	1
	S	UL	6	4	3	4	3	9	6	4	4	2	2
M	NS	UL	11	4	2	4	2	4	4	4	4	3	1
	S	UL	12	5	3	5	3	12	8	6	5	4	2
R-1 ^h	NS ^d	UL	11	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	3	2
	S13R	4	4									4	3
	S	UL	12	5	5	5	5	18	12	8	5	4	3
R-2 ^h	NS ^d	UL	11	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	3	2
	S13R	4	4	4								4	3
	S	UL	12	5	5	5	5	18	12	8	5	4	3
R-3 ^h	NS ^d	UL	11	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	3	3
	S13R	4	4									4	4
	S	UL	12	5	5	5	5	18	12	5	5	4	4
R-4 ^h	NS ^d	UL	11	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	3	2
	S13R	4	4									4	3
	S	UL	12	5	5	5	5	18	12	5	5	4	3
S-1	NS	UL	11	4	2	3	2	4	4	4	4	3	1
	S	UL	12	5	3	4	3	10	7	5	5	4	2
S-2	NS	UL	11	5	3	4	3	4	4	4	4	4	2
	S	UL	12	6	4	5	4	12	8	5	5	5	3
U	NS	UL	5	4	2	3	2	4	4	4	4	2	1
	S	UL	6	5	3	4	3	9	6	5	5	3	2

896

897

898

899

900

901

Note: UL = Unlimited; NP = Not Permitted; NS = Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system; S = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; S13R = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2; S13D = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 902 a. See Chapters 4 and 5 for specific exceptions to the allowable height in this chapter.
903 b. See Section 903.2 for the minimum thresholds for protection by an automatic sprinkler system for specific
904 occupancies.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 905 c. New Group H occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with
906 Section 903.2.5.
907 d. The NS value is only for use in evaluation of existing building height in accordance with the *Dallas*
908 [*International*] *Existing Building Code*.
909 e. New Group I-1 and I-3 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance
910 with Section 903.2.6. For new Group I-1 occupancies, Condition 1, see Exception 1 of Section 903.2.6.
911 f. New and existing Group I-2 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in
912 accordance with Section 903.2.6 and Section 1103.5 of the *Dallas* [*International*] *Fire Code*.
913 g. For new Group I-4 occupancies, see Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 903.2.6.
914 h. New Group R occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with
915 Section 903.2.8.
916 i. For Group E occupancies and rooms normally occupied by pre-kindergarten, kindergarten, or first grade
917 students.
918 j. For Group E child day care facilities see Section 308.5.1. All other child day care facilities must comply with
919 the I-4 provisions of this code.”
920

New COG amendment

921 **31 Table 506.2, “Allowable Area Factor (At = NS, S1, S13R, S13D or SM, as**
922 **applicable) in square feet,” of Subsection 506.2, “Allowable area determination,” of**
923 **Section 506, “Building Area,” of Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,”**
924 **of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**
925

- 926 ~~i. The maximum allowable area for single story nonsprinklered Group U greenhouse is~~
927 ~~permitted to be 9,000 square feet, or the allowable area shall be permitted to comply~~
928 ~~with Table C102.1 or Appendix C.~~
929

Carryover COG Amendment

930 **32. Paragraph 506.3.1, “Minimum Percentage of Perimeter,” of Subsection 506.3,**
931 **“Frontage Increase,” of Section 506, “Building Area,” of Chapter 5, “General Building**
932 **Heights and Areas,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**
933

934 **“506.3.1 Minimum percentage of perimeter.** To qualify for an area factor increase based on
935 frontage, a building shall have not less than 25 percent of its perimeter on a *public way* or open
936 space. Such open space shall be either on the same lot or dedicated for public use and shall be
937 accessed from a street or approved *fire lane*. In order to be considered as accessible, if not in
938 direct contact with a street or fire lane, a minimum 10-foot wide pathway meeting the
939 requirements for fire department access from the street or an approved fire lane shall be
940 provided for hose lay measurement pathway requirements.”
941
942

Carryover Dallas Amendment*

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

944 **33. Subsection 507.3, “Nonsprinklered, One-Story Buildings,” of Section 507,**
945 **“Unlimited Area Buildings,” of Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,” of the**
946 **2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

947 **“507.3 [~~Nonsprinklered,~~] O [e]ne-story buildings.** The area of a Group F-2 or S-2 building
948 not more than one *story* in height shall not be limited where the building is surrounded and
949 adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width. Sprinklers shall
950 be provided as per this code.”
951

952 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

953 **29. Subsection 507.4, “Sprinklered, One-Story Buildings,” of Section 507,**
954 **“Unlimited Area Buildings,” of Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,” of the**
955 **2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

956 **“507.4 Sprinklered, one-story buildings.** The area of a Group A-4 building no more than one
957 *story above grade plane* of other than Type V construction, or the area of a Group B, F, M or S
958 building no more than one *story above grade plane* of any construction type, shall not be limited
959 where the building is provided with an *automatic sprinkler system* throughout in accordance with
960 Section 903.3.1.1 and is surrounded and adjoined by *public ways* or *yards* not less than 60 feet (18
961 288 mm) in width.

962 **Exceptions:**

- 963
- 964
 - 965 4. Buildings and structures of Type I and II construction for rack storage facilities that do
966 not have access by the public shall not be limited in height, provided that such buildings
967 conform to the requirements of Sections 507.4 and 903.3.1.1 and Chapter 32 of the
968 Dallas [~~International~~] Fire Code.
 - 969
 - 970 5. The *automatic sprinkler system* shall not be required in areas occupied by athletes
971 during their competitive event for indoor participant sports, such as tennis, skating,
972 swimming and equestrian activities in occupancies in Group A-4, provided that:
973
 - 974 5.1. *Exit* doors directly to the outside are provided for occupants of the participant
975 sports areas; and
 - 976
 - 977 5.2. The building is equipped with a *fire alarm system* with *manual fire alarm boxes*
978 installed in accordance with Section 907.
 - 979
 - 980 5.3. An *automatic sprinkler system* is provided in storage rooms, press boxes,
981 concession booths or other spaces ancillary to the sport activity spaces.

982 **Carryover Dallas Amendment, Division 2 and 3 removed per June 13, 2022 amendments.**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

983 **34. Section 507, “Unlimited Area Buildings,” of Chapter 5, “General Building**
984 **Heights and Areas,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new**
985 **Subsection 507.14, “Unlimited Area Based on Types of Construction,” to read as follows:**

986 **“507.14 Unlimited area based on types of construction. The area of any five-story or less Type**
987 **IIA, three-story or less Type IIB, or three-story or less Type IV building, except one housing Group**
988 **H occupancies, is unlimited if the building is provided with an *approved automatic sprinkler***
989 ***system* throughout as specified in Chapter 9. These provisions do not apply to *covered and open***
990 ***mall buildings, anchor buildings, or motion picture theaters.***
991

992 **Exception: Unlimited area buildings may house Group H Occupancies as specified in Section**
993 **507.8.”**
994

995 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

996 **35. Paragraph 508.2.3, “Allowable Building Area,” of Subsection 508.2,**
997 **“Accessory Occupancies,” of Section 508, “Mixed Use and Occupancy,” of Chapter 5,**
998 **“General Building Heights and Areas,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended**
999 **to read as follows:**

1000 **“508.2.3 Allowable building area. The allowable area of the building shall be based on the**
1001 **applicable provisions of Section 506 for the main occupancy of the building. Aggregate**
1002 **accessory occupancies shall not occupy more than 10 percent of the floor area of the story in**
1003 **which they are located and shall not exceed the tabular values for non-sprinklered buildings in**
1004 **Table 506.2 for each such accessory occupancy.**
1005

1006 **Exception: Aggregate accessory occupancies in a building provided throughout with an**
1007 ***approved automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall not occupy**
1008 **more than 20 percent of the area of the story in which they are located and shall not exceed**
1009 **the tabular values in Table 506.2 without *building area* increases in accordance with**
1010 **Section 506 for such accessory occupancies.”**
1011

1012 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

1013 **36. Subsection 510.2, “Horizontal Building Separation Allowance,” of Section 510,**
1014 **“Special Provisions,” of Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,” of the 2021**
1015 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1016 **“510.2 Horizontal building separation allowance. A building shall be considered as separate**
1017 **and distinct buildings for the purpose of determining area limitations, continuity of *fire walls,***
Amend Chapter 53 (adopt 2021 International Building Code) – Page 30 **Updated September 28, 2022**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1018 limitation of number of *stories* and type of construction where all of the following applicable
1019 conditions are met:

- 1020
- 1021 1. The buildings are separated with a *horizontal assembly* having a *fire-resistance rating* of
1022 not less than 3 hours. Where vertical offsets are provided as part of a horizontal assembly,
1023 the vertical offset and the structure supporting the vertical offset shall have a *fire-resistance*
1024 *rating* of not less than 3 hours. In a structure protected throughout both above and below
1025 the *horizontal assembly* with an *approved automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with
1026 Section 903.3.1.1, the *horizontal assembly* may be of a minimum 2-hour *fire-resistance*
1027 *rating*.
1028
 - 1029 2. The building below the *horizontal assembly* is of Type IA construction.
1030
 - 1031 3. *Shaft, stairway, ramp* and escalator enclosures through the *horizontal assembly* shall have
1032 not less than a 2-hour *fire-resistance rating* with opening protectives in accordance with
1033 Section 716.
1034

1035 **Exception:** Where the enclosure walls below the *horizontal assembly* have not less than
1036 the [a 3-hour] *fire-resistance rating* as required by Condition 1 with opening protectives
1037 in accordance with Section 716, the enclosure walls extending above the *horizontal*
1038 *assembly* shall be permitted to have a 1-hour *fire-resistance rating*, provided the following
1039 conditions are met:

- 1040
- 1041 1. The building above the *horizontal assembly* is not required to be of Type I
1042 construction;
- 1043 2. The enclosure connects fewer than four *stories*; and
1044 3. The enclosure opening protectives above the *horizontal assembly* have a *fire*
1045 *protection rating* of not less than 1 hour.
1046
- 1047 4. *Interior exit stairway* located within the Type IA building are permitted to be of
1048 combustible materials where the following requirements are met:
1049
 - 1050 4.1. The building above the Type IA building is of Type III, IV, or V construction.
1051
 - 1052 4.2. The *stairway* located in the Type IA building is enclosed by 3-hour fire-resistance-
1053 rated construction with opening protective in accordance with Section 716.
1054
- 1055 5. The building or buildings above the *horizontal assembly* shall be permitted to have multiple
1056 Group A occupancy uses, each with an *occupant load* of less than 300, or Group B, M, R
1057 or S occupancies.
1058
- 1059 6. The building below the *horizontal assembly* shall be protected throughout by an *approved*
1060 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and shall be permitted to be any
1061 occupancy allowed by this code except Group H.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1062 6. The maximum *building height* in feet (mm) shall not exceed the limits set forth in Section
 1063 504.3 for the building having the smaller allowable height as measured from the *grade*
 1064 *plane.*”

1065 **37. Chapter 5, “General Building Heights and Areas,” of the 2021 International**
 1067 **Building Code is amended by adding a new Section 511, “Area Limits,” to read as follows:**

1068 **“SECTION 511**
 1069 **AREA LIMITS**
 1070 **Carryover amendment with addition of Non-sprinklered from June 13, 2022 amendments**
 1071 **511.1 Area limits. All floor area must comply with Sections 511.1.1 through 511.1.3.**
 1072

1073 **511.1.1 Occupancy fire areas. Occupancy fire areas must be limited in accordance with**
 1074 **Sections 903.2.1 through 903.2.10.2.**
 1075

1076 **511.1.2 Nonsprinklered b [B]uilding fire areas. Nonsprinklered b[B]uilding fire areas must**
 1077 **be limited in accordance with Section 903.2.13.”**
 1078

1079 **511.1.3 High hazard high-piled storage areas. A 2-hour fire wall constructed in accordance**
 1080 **with Section 706 shall be used to divide all high-piled storage buildings exceeding 500,000**
 1081 **square feet in area. See Section 3207.2 and 3208.2 of the Dallas Fire Code for additional fire-**
 1082 **resistive separation requirements.”**
 1083
 1084

1085 **CHAPTER 6**
 1086 **TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION**

1087 **38. Table 601, “Fire-Resistance Rating Requirements for Building Elements**
 1088 **(Hours),” of Section 601, “General,” of Chapter 6, “Types of Construction,” of the 2021**
 1089 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**
 1090

1091 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

1092 **“TABLE 601**
 1093 **FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING REQUIREMENTS**
 1094 **FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS (HOURS)**

BUILDING ELEMENT	TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV				TYPE V	
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	C	HT	A	B
Primary structural frame ^f (see Section 202)	3 ^{a,b}	2 ^{a,b,c}	1 ^{b,c}	0 ^c	1 ^{b,c}	0	3 ^a	2 ^a	2 ^a	HT	1 ^{b,c}	0

1095

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

Bearing walls												
Exterior ^{e, i, h}	3	2	1	0	2	2	3	2	2	2	1	0
Interior	3 ^a	2 ^a	1	0	1	0	3	2	2	1/HT ^g	1	0
Nonbearing walls and partitions Exterior	See Table 705.5											
Nonbearing walls and partitions Interior ^d	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	See Section 2304.11.2	0	0
Floor construction and associated secondary members (see Section 202)	2	2	1	0	1	0	2	2	2	HT	1	0
Roof construction and associated secondary members ^h (See Section 202)	1 ½ ^b	1 ^{b,c}	1 ^{b,c}	0 ^c	1 ^{b,c}	0	1 ½	1	1	HT	1 ^{b,c}	0

- 1096 For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
- 1097 a. Roof supports: Fire-resistance ratings of primary structural frame and bearing walls are permitted to be reduced
- 1098 by 1 hour where supporting a roof only.
- 1099 b. Except in Group F-1, H, M and S-1 occupancies, fire protection of structural members shall not be required,
- 1100 including protection of roof framing and decking where every part of the roof construction is 20 feet or more
- 1101 above any floor immediately below. Fire-retardant-treated wood members shall be allowed to be used for such
- 1102 unprotected members.
- 1103 c. In all occupancies, heavy timber complying with Section 2304.11 shall be allowed for roof construction, including
- 1104 primary structural frame members where a 1-hour or less fire-resistance rating is required.
- 1105 d. Not less than the fire-resistance rating required by other sections of this code.
- 1106 e. Not less than the fire-resistance rating based on fire separation distance (see Table 705.5).
- 1107 f. Not less than the fire-resistance rating as referenced in Section 704.10.
- 1108 g. Heavy timber bearing walls supporting more than two floors or more than a floor and a roof shall have a fire
- 1109 resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.
- 1110 h. In all occupancies, when the building is protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system in
- 1111 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, roof construction and the structural frame supporting the roof only may be of
- 1112 unprotected noncombustible materials or heavy-timber construction complying with Section 602.4. This
- 1113 provision may be used for roof construction, nonbearing partitions and nonbearing exterior walls in lieu of fire-
- 1114 retardant treated wood in a building meeting the requirements of Section 603.1, Item 1.”

Carryover Dallas Amendment*

1117 **39. Subsection 602.4.1, “Type IV-A,” of Subsection 602.4, “Type IV,” of Section**

1118 **602 “Construction Classification” of Chapter 6, “Types of Construction,” of the 2021**

1119 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1120 **“602.4.2 Type IV A.** Building elements in Type IV A construction shall be protected in

1121 accordance with Section 602.4.1.1 through 602.4.1.6. The required *fire-resistance rating* of

1122 noncombustible elements and protected *mass timber* elements shall be determined in

1123 accordance with Section 703.2 or Section 703.3.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1124 **Carryover Dallas Amendment***

1125 **40. Subsection 602.4.2, “Type IV B,” of Subsection 602.4, “Type IV,” of Section**

1126 **602 “Construction Classification” of Chapter 6, “Types of Construction,” of the 2021**

1127 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1128 **“602.4.2 Type IV B.** Building elements in Type IV B construction shall be protected in accordance
1129 with Section 602.4.1.1 through 602.4.1.6. The required *fire-resistance rating* of
1130 noncombustible elements and protected *mass timber* elements shall be determined in
1131 accordance with Section 703.2 or Section 703.3.

1132 **602.4.2 Exterior Protection.** The outside face of exterior walls of *mass timber* construction
1133 shall be protected with *noncombustible protection* with a minimum assigned time of 40
1134 minutes as determined in Section 722.7.2(1). All components of the *exterior wall* covering
1135 shall be of noncombustible material except *water resistive barriers* having a peak heat release
1136 rate of less than 150 kW/m², a total heat release of less than 20MJ/m² and an effective heat of
1137 combustion of less than 18MJ/kg as determined in accordance with ASTM E 1345, and having
1138 a *flame spread index* of 25 or less and a *smoke-developed index* of 450 or less as determined
1139 in accordance with ASTM E 84 or UL 723. The ASTM E 1345 test shall be conducted on
1140 specimens at the thickness intended for use, in the horizontal orientation and at an incident
1141 radiant heat flux of 50 kW/m².

1142 **602.4.2.2 Interior protection.** Interior faces of all *mass timber* elements, including the inside
1143 face of exterior *mass timber* walls and mass timber roofs, shall be protected, as required by this
1144 section, with materials complying with Section 703.3 [~~707.3~~].
1145

1146 **602.4.2.2.1 Protection time.** *Noncombustible protection* shall contribute a time equal to or greater
1147 than times assigned in Table 722.7.1(1), but not less than 80 minutes. The use of materials and their
1148 respective protection contributions listed in Table 722.7.1(2) shall be permitted to be used for
1149 compliance with Section 722.7.1.
1150

1151 **602.4.2.2.2 Protected area.** All interior faces of all *mass timber* elements shall be protected in
1152 accordance with Section 602.4.2.2.1, including the inside face of exterior *mass timber* walls and
1153 *mass timber* roofs.
1154

1155 **Exceptions:** Unprotected portions of *mass timber* ceilings and walls complying with
1156 Section 602.4.2.2.4 and the following:
1157

1158 1. Unprotected portions of *mass timber* ceilings, including attached beams, shall be
1159 permitted and shall be limited to an area less than or equal to 100 percent of the floor
1160 area in any dwelling unit or fire area; or

1161 1.1. Unprotected portions of *mass timber* walls, including attached columns, shall
1162 be permitted and shall be limited to an area less than or equal to 40 percent of
1163 the floor area in any dwelling unit or fire area; or

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 1164 1.2. Unprotected portions of both walls and ceilings of *mass timber*, including
1165 attached columns and beams, in any dwelling unit or fire area shall be permitted
1166 in accordance with Section 602.4.2.2.3.
1167
1168 1.3. *Mass timber* columns and beams which are not an integral portion of walls or
1169 ceilings, respectively, shall be permitted to be unprotected without restriction
1170 of either aggregate area or separation from one another.
1171
1172 2. *Mass timber* columns and beams that are not an integral portion of walls or
1173 ceilings, respectively, shall be permitted to be unprotected without restriction
1174 of either aggregate area or separation from one another.

1175 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

- 1176 **41. Subsection 603.1, “Allowable Materials,” of Section 603, “Combustible**
1177 **Material in Type I and II Construction,” of Chapter 6, “Types of Construction,” of the 2021**
1178 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1179 **“603.1 Allowable materials.** Combustible materials shall be permitted in buildings of Type I or
1180 II construction in the following applications in accordance with Sections 603.1.1 through 603.1.3:

- 1181
1182 1. *Fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be permitted in:
1183
1184 1.1. Nonbearing partitions where the required *fire-resistance rating* is 2 hours or less
1185 except in *shaft enclosures* within Group I-e occupancies and *ambulatory care facilities*.
1186
1187 1.2. Nonbearing *exterior walls* where fire-resistance rated construction is not required.
1188
1189 1.3. Roof construction, including girders, trusses, framing and decking.

1190 **Exceptions:**

- 1191
1192
1193 1. In buildings of Type IA construction exceeding two *stories above grade*
1194 *plane*, *fire-retardant-treated wood* is not permitted in roof construction
1195 where the vertical distance from the upper floor to the roof is less than 20
1196 feet (6096 mm).
1197
1198 2. Group I-2, roof construction containing *fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be
1199 covered by not less than Class A *roof covering* or roof assembly, and the roof
1200 assembly, and the roof assembly shall have a *fire-resistance rating* where
1201 required by the construction type.
1202
1203 1.4. Balconies, porches, decks and exterior stairways not used as required exits on
1204 buildings three stories or less above grade plane.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1205 2. Thermal and acoustical insulation, other than foam plastics, having a *flame spread index*
1206 of not more than 25.

1207

1208 **Exceptions:**

1209

1210 1. Insulation placed between two layers of non-combustible materials without an
1211 intervening airspace shall be allowed to have a *flame spread index* of not more than
1212 100.

1213

1214 2. Insulation installed between a finished floor and solid decking without intervening
1215 airspace shall be allowed to have a *flame spread index* of not more than 200.

1216

1217 3. Foam plastics in accordance with Chapter 26.

1218

1219 4. Roof coverings that have an A, B or C classification.

1220

1221 5. *Interior floor finish* and floor covering materials installed in accordance with Section
1222 804.

1223

1224 6. Millwork such as doors, door frames, window sashes and frames.

1225

1226 7. *Interior wall and ceiling finishes* installed in accordance with Section 803.

1227

1228 8. *Trim* installed in accordance with Section 806.

1229

1230 9. Where not installed greater than 15 feet (4572 mm) above grade, show windows,
1231 nailing or furring strips and wooden bulkheads below show windows, including their
1232 frames, aprons and show cases.

1233

1234 10. Finish flooring installed in accordance with Section 805.

1235

1236 11. Partitions dividing portions of stores, offices or similar places occupied by one tenant
1237 only that do not establish a *corridor* serving an *occupant load* of 30 or more shall be
1238 permitted to be constructed of *fire-retardant-treated wood*, 1-hour fire-resistance-rated
1239 construction or of wood panels or similar light construction up to 6 feet (1829 mm) in
1240 height.

1241

1242 12. Stages and platforms constructed in accordance with Sections 410.2 and 410.3,
1243 respectively.

1244

1245 13. Combustible *exterior wall coverings*, balconies and similar projections and bay or oriel
1246 windows or similar appendages in accordance with Chapter 14 and Section 705.2.3.1.

1247

1248 14. Blocking such as handrails, millwork, cabinets and window and door frames.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 1249 15. Light-transmitting plastics as permitted by Chapter 26.
1250
1251 16. Mastics and caulking materials applied to provide flexible seals between components
1252 of *exterior wall* construction.
1253
1254 17. Exterior plastic veneer installed in accordance with Section 2605.2.
1255
1256 18. Nailing or furring strips as permitted by Section 803.15.
1257
1258 19. Heavy timber as permitted by Note c to Table 601 and Sections 602.4.4.4 and 705.2.3.1.
1259
1260 20. Aggregates, component materials and admixtures as permitted by Section 703.2.1.2.
1261
1262 21. Sprayed fire-resistant materials and intumescent and mastic fire-resistant coatings,
1263 determined on the basis of *fire-resistance* tests in accordance with Section 703.2 and
1264 installed in accordance with Sections 1705.15 and 1705.16, respectively.
1265
1266 22. Materials used to protect penetrations in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance
1267 with Section 714.
1268
1269 23. Materials used to protect joints in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance with
1270 Section 715.
1271
1272 24. Materials allowed in the concealed spaces of buildings of Types I and II construction
1273 in accordance with Section 718.5.
1274
1275 25. Materials exposed within plenums complying with Section 602 of the Dallas
1276 [~~International~~] *Mechanical Code*.
1277
1278 26. Wall construction of freezers and coolers of less than 1,000 square feet (92.9 m²), in
1279 size, lined on both sides with noncombustible materials and the building is protected
1280 throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
1281

1282 **603.1.1 Ducts.** The use of nonmetallic ducts shall be permitted where installed in accordance
1283 with the limitations of the Dallas [~~International~~] *Mechanical Code*.
1284

1285 **603.1.2 Piping.** The use of combustible piping materials shall be permitted where installed in
1286 accordance with the limitations of the Dallas [~~International~~] *Mechanical Code* and the Dallas
1287 [~~International~~] *Plumbing Code*.
1288

1289 **603.1.3 Electrical.** The use of electrical wiring methods with combustible insulation, tubing,
1290 raceways and related components shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the
1291 limitations of this code.”
1292
1293

CHAPTER 7

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION

Carryover Dallas Amendments

42. Subsection 705.2.3.1, “Balconies and similar projections,” of Subsection 705.2.3, “Projection protection,” of Section 705.2, “Projections” of Section 705 “Fire Walls” of Chapter 7, “Fire-Resistance Rating Requirements for Exterior Walls Based on Fire Separation Distance,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

705.2.3.1 Balconies and similar projections. Balconies and similar projections of combustible construction other than *fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be *fire-resistance* rated where required by Table 601 for floor construction or shall be of heavy timber construction in accordance with Section 2304.11. The aggregate length of the projections shall not exceed 50 percent of the building’s perimeter on each floor.

Exceptions:

1. On buildings of Types I and II construction, three *stories* or less above *grade plane*, *fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be permitted for balconies, porches, decks and exterior *stairways* not used as required exits.
2. Untreated wood and plastic composites that comply with ASTM D7032 and Section 2612 are permitted for pickets, rails and similar *guard* components that are limited to 42 inches (1067 mm) in height installed at fully sprinklered exterior exit ways, exterior stairs or exterior exit balconies of Group R occupancies.
3. Balconies and similar projections on buildings of Types III, IV and V construction shall be permitted to be of Type V construction and shall not be required to have a *fire-resistance rating* where sprinkler protection is extended to these areas.
4. Where sprinkler protection is extended to the balcony areas, the aggregate length of the balcony on each floor shall not be limited.

705.2.4 Bay and oriel windows. Bay and oriel windows constructed of combustible materials shall conform to the type of construction required for the building to which they are attached.

Exception: *Fire-retardant-treated wood* shall be permitted on buildings three *stories* or less above *grade plane* of Type I, II, III or IV construction.

Carryover Dallas Amendments

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1331 **43. Table 705.5, “Fire-Resistance Rating Requirements for Exterior Walls Based on**
 1332 **Fire Separation Distance,” of Section 705, “Exterior Walls,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke**
 1333 **Protection Features” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1334 style="text-align: center;">**“TABLE 705.5**
 1335 **FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING REQUIREMENTS FOR EXTERIOR WALLS BASED ON**
 1336 **FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE^{a, d, g, l}**

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE = X (feet)	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION	OCCUPANCY GROUP H ^e	OCCUPANCY GROUP F-1, M, S-1 ^f	OCCUPANCY GROUP A, B, E, F-2, I, R ⁱ , S-2, U ^{h, j, k}
$X < 5^b$	All	3	2	1
$5 \leq X < 10$	IA, IVA	3	2	1
	Others	2	1	1
$10 \leq X < 30$	IA, IB, IVA, IVB	2	1	1 ^c
	IIB, VB	1	0	0
	Others	1	1	1 ^c
$X \geq 30$	All	0	0	0

- 1337 For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
- 1338 a. Load-bearing exterior walls shall also comply with the fire-resistance rating requirements of Table 601.
 - 1339 b. See Section 706.1.1 for party walls.
 - 1340 c. Open parking garages complying with Section 406 shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating.
 - 1341 d. The fire-resistance rating of an exterior wall is determined based upon the fire separation distance of the exterior
 - 1342 wall and the story in which the wall is located.
 - 1343 e. For special requirements for Group H occupancies, see Section 415.6.
 - 1344 f. For special requirements for Group S aircraft hangars, see Section 412.3.1.
 - 1345 g. Where Table 705.8 permits nonbearing exterior walls with unlimited area of unprotected openings, the required
 - 1346 fire-resistance rating for the exterior walls is 0 hours.
 - 1347 h. For a building containing only a Group U occupancy private garage or carport, the exterior wall shall not be
 - 1348 required to have a fire-resistance rating where the fire separation is 5 feet or greater.
 - 1349 i. For a Group R-3 building of Type II-B or Type V-B construction, the exterior wall shall not be required to have
 - 1350 a fire-resistance rating where the fire separation is 5 feet or greater.
 - 1351 j. For special requirements on Group R-2, R-3 and Group U carports, see Section 406.3.5.1.
 - 1352 k. Exterior walls of carports open on all sides and constructed entirely of noncombustible materials are not required
 - 1353 to have a fire-resistance rating. Distance between individual carports and imaginary property lines must be a
 - 1354 minimum of 3 feet. All carport projections must comply with Section 705.2.
 - 1355 l. In buildings provided throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section
 - 1356 903.3.1.1, Table 602 3-hour exterior wall protection may be reduced to 2-hour protection, Table 602 2-hour
 - 1357 protection may be reduced to 1-hour protection. Table 602 1-hour protection cannot be reduced.”
 - 1358

1359 **44. Table 705.8, “Maximum Area of Exterior Wall Openings Based on Fire**
 1360 **Separation Distance and Degree of Opening Protection,” of Subsection 705.8, “Openings,”**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1361 of Section 705, “Exterior Walls,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke Protection Features,” of the
 1362 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

1363 **Carryover Dallas Amendments**

1364 **“TABLE 705.8**
 1365 **MAXIMUM AREA OF EXTERIOR WALL OPENINGS BASED ON FIRE**
 1366 **SEPARATION DISTANCE AND DEGREE OF OPENING PROTECTION**

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)	DEGREE OF OPENING PROTECTION	ALLOWABLE AREA ^a
0 to less than 3 ^{b, c, k}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	Not Permitted ^{k, l}
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	Not Permitted ^{k, l}
	Protected (P)	Not Permitted ^{k, l}
3 to less than 5 ^{d, e}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	Not Permitted
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	15 %
	Protected (P)	15%
5 to less than 10 ^{e, f, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	10% ^h
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	25%
	Protected (P)	25%
10 to less than 15 ^{e, f, g, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	15% ^h
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	45%
	Protected (P)	45%
15 to less than 20 ^{f, g, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	25%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	75%
	Protected (P)	75%
20 to less than 25 ^{f, g, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	45%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit
25 to less than 30 ^{f, g, j}	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	70%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit
30 or greater	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	No Limit
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) ^l	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit

1367 For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.
 1368 UP, NS = Unprotected openings in buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in
 1369 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
 1370 UP, S = Unprotected openings in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance
 1371 with Section 903.3.1.1.
 1372 P = Openings protected with an opening protective assembly in accordance with Section 705.8.2.
 1373 a. Values indicated are the percentage of the area of the exterior wall, per story.
 1374 b. For the requirements for fire walls of buildings with differing heights, see Section 706.6.1.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1375 c. For openings in a fire wall for buildings on the same lot, see Section 706.8.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 1376 d. The maximum percentage of unprotected and protected openings shall be 25 percent for Group R-3 occupancies.
1377 e. Unprotected openings shall not be permitted for openings with a fire separation distance of less than 15 feet for
1378 Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies.
1379 f. The area of unprotected and protected openings shall not be limited for Group R-3 occupancies, with a fire
1380 separation distance of 5 feet or greater.
1381 g. The area of openings in an open parking structure with a fire separation distance of 10 feet or greater shall not be
1382 limited.
1383 h. Includes buildings accessory to Group R-3.
1384 i. Not applicable to Group H-1, H-2 and H-3 occupancies.
1385 j. The area of openings in a building containing only a Group U occupancy private garage or carport with a fire
1386 separation distance of 5 feet or greater shall not be limited.
1387 k. For openings between S-2 parking garage and Group R-2 building, see Section 705.3, Exception 2.
1388 l. Carpports open on all sides and constructed entirely of noncombustible materials may have openings and the
1389 openings shall not require protection. Distance between individual carports and imaginary property lines shall be
1390 3 feet minimum. All carport projections shall comply with Section 705.2 of this code.
1391

Carryover Dallas Amendments

- 1392 **45. Table 706.4, “Fire Wall Fire-Resistance Ratings,” of Subsection 706.4, “Fire-**
1393 **Resistance Rating,” of Section 706, “Fire Walls,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke Protection**
1394 **Features,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**
1395

1396 **“TABLE 706.4**

1397 **FIRE WALL FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS^c**

GROUP	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)
A, B, E, H-4, I, R-1, R-2, U	3 ^a
F-1, H-3 ^b , H-5, M, S-1	3
H-1, H-2	4 ^b
F-2, S-2, R-3, R-4	2

- 1398 a. In Type II or V construction, walls shall be permitted to have a 2-hour *fire-resistance rating*.
1399 b. For Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 buildings, also see Sections 415.7 and 415.8.
1400 c. In buildings protected throughout by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, 4-hour
1401 and 3-hour fire walls may be reduced by 1 hour when separating other than a Group H occupancy. This reduction
1402 shall also apply for fire walls required by Section 503.1.”
1403

- 1404 **46. Subsection 708.4.2, “Fireblocks and draftstops in combustibile construction” of**
1405 **Subsection 708.4, “Continuity,” of Section 708, “Fire Partitions,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and**
1406 **Smoke Protection Features,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as**
1407 **follows:**

New COG amendment (2021)

- 1408 **“708.4.2 Fireblocks and draftstops in combustibile construction.** In combustibile construction
1409 where *fire partitions* do not extend to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab
1410

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1411 above, the space above and along the line of the *fire partition* shall be provided with one of the
1412 following:

- 1413 1. *Fireblocking* up to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above using
1414 materials complying with Section 718.2.1.
- 1415 2. Draftstopping up to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above
1416 using materials complying with Section 718.3.1 for floors or Section 718.4.1 for *attics*.

1417 **Exceptions:**

- 1418 1. Buildings equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed throughout in
1419 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, or in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2
1420 provided that sprinkler protection is provided in the space between the top of the
1421 *fire partition* and the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above as
1422 required for systems complying with Section 903.3.1.1. Portions of buildings
1423 containing concealed spaces filled with noncombustible insulation as permitted for
1424 sprinkler omission shall not apply to this exception for draftstopping.
- 1425 2. Where *corridor* walls provide a *sleeping unit* or *dwelling unit* separation,
1426 draftstopping shall only be required above one of the *corridor* walls.
- 1427 3. In Group R-2 occupancies with fewer than four *dwelling unit*, *fireblocking* and
1428 draftstopping shall not be required.
- 1429 4. In Group R-2 occupancies up to and including four stories in height in buildings
1430 not exceeding 60 feet (18 288 mm) in height above *grade plane*, the *attic* space
1431 shall be subdivided by draftstops into areas not exceeding 3,000 square feet (279
1432 m²) or above every two *dwelling units*, whichever is smaller.
- 1433 5. In Group R-3 occupancies with fewer than three *dwelling units*, *fireblocking* and
1434 draftstopping shall not be required in floor assemblies.

1435 **Carryover COG Amendment**

1436 **47. Paragraph 712.1.9, “Two-Story Openings,” of Subsection 712.1, “General,” of**
1437 **Section 712, “Vertical Openings,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke Protection Features,” of**
1438 **the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1439 **“712.1.9 Two-story openings.** In other than Groups I-2 and I-3, a vertical opening that is not
1440 used as one of the applications listed in this section shall be permitted if the opening complies
1441 with all of the items below:

- 1442 1. Does not connect more than two stories.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 1452 2. Does not penetrate a horizontal assembly that separates fire areas or smoke barriers that
1453 separate smoke compartments.
1454
1455 3. Is not concealed within the construction of a wall or a floor/ceiling assembly.
1456
1457 4. Is not open to a corridor in Group I and H [~~R~~] occupancies.
1458
1459 5. Is not open to a corridor on nonsprinklered floors.
1460
1461 6. Is separated from floor openings and air transfer openings serving other floors by
1462 construction conforming to required shaft enclosures.”
1463

1464 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

1465 **48. Subsection 713.13, “Waste and Linen Chutes and Incinerator Rooms,” of**
1466 **Section 713, “Shaft Enclosures,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke Protection Features,” of the**
1467 **2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1468 **“713.13 Waste and linen chutes and incinerator rooms.** Waste and linen chutes shall comply
1469 with the provisions of NFPA 82 including the requirements for venting, Chapter 6 and shall meet
1470 the requirements of Sections 712 and 713.13.1 through 713.13.6. Incinerator rooms shall meet the
1471 provisions of Sections 713.13.4 through 713.13.5.
1472

1473 **Exception:** Chutes serving and contained within a single dwelling unit.
1474

1475 **713.13.1 Waste and linen.** A shaft enclosure containing a recycling, or waste or linen chute
1476 shall not be used for any other purpose and shall be enclosed in accordance with Section 713.4.
1477 A shaft enclosure shall be permitted to contain recycling and waste chutes. Openings into the
1478 shaft, from access rooms and discharge rooms, shall be protected in accordance with this
1479 section and Section 716. Openings into chutes shall not be located in *corridors*. Doors into
1480 chutes shall be self-closing. Discharge doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon the
1481 actuation of a smoke detector in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6, except that heat-activated
1482 closing devices shall be permitted between the shaft and the discharge room.
1483

1484 **713.13.2 Materials.** A shaft enclosure containing a waste, recycling, or linen chute shall be
1485 constructed of materials as permitted by the building type of construction.
1486

1487 **713.13.3 Chute access rooms.** Access openings for waste or linen chutes shall be located in
1488 rooms or compartments enclosed by not less than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in
1489 accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section
1490 711, or both. Openings into the access rooms shall be protected by opening protectives having
1491 a *fire protection rating* of not less than ¾ hour. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon
1492 the detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6. The room or compartment shall

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1493 be configured to allow the access door to the room or compartment to close and latch with the
1494 access panel to the refuse or laundry chute in any position.
1495

1496 **713.13.4 Chute discharge room.** Waste or linen chutes shall discharge into an enclosed room
1497 separated by *fire barriers* with a *fire-resistance rating* not less than the required fire rating of
1498 the shaft enclosure and constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies*
1499 constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Openings into the discharge room from
1500 the remainder of the building shall be protected by opening protectives having a *fire protection*
1501 *rating* equal to the protection required for the shaft enclosure. Doors shall be self- or automatic-
1502 closing upon the detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6. Waste chutes shall
1503 not terminate in an incinerator room. Waste and linen rooms that are not provided with chutes
1504 need only comply with Table 509.
1505

1506 **713.13.5 Incinerator room.** Incinerator rooms shall comply with Table 509.
1507

1508 **713.13.6 Automatic sprinkler system.** An *approved automatic sprinkler system* shall be
1509 installed in accordance with Section 903.2.11.2.”
1510

1511 **New COG amendment**

1512 **49. Subsection 718.3, “Draftstopping in floors,” of Section 718, “Concealed**
1513 **Spaces,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke Protection Features,” of the 2021 International**
1514 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

1515 **“718.3 Draftstopping in floors.** Draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide floor/ceiling
1516 assemblies where required by Section 708.4.2. In other than Group R occupancies, draftstopping
1517 shall be installed to subdivide combustible floor/ceiling assemblies so that horizontal floor areas
1518 do not exceed 1,000 square feet (93 m²).
1519

1520 **Exception:** Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in
1521 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and provided that in combustible construction
1522 sprinkler protection is provided in the floor space.
1523

1524 **718.3.1 Draftstopping materials.** Draftstopping materials shall be not less than 1/2-inche
1525 (12.7 mm) *gypsum board*, 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) *wood structural panel*, 3/8-inch (9.5 mm)
1526 *particleboard*, 1-inch (25 mm) nominal lumber, cement *fiberboard*, batts or blankets of
1527 mineral wool or glass fiber, or other *approved* materials adequately supported. The
1528 integrity of *draftstops* shall be maintained.
1529

1530 **New COG amendment**

1531 **50. Subsection 718.4, “Draftstopping in attics,” of Section 718, “Concealed**
1532 **Spaces,” of Chapter 7, “Fire and Smoke Protection Features,” of the 2021 International**
1533 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1534 “**718.4 Draftstopping in attics.** Draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide *attic* spaces where
1535 required by Section 708.2. In other than Group R, draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide
1536 combustible *attic* spaces and combustible concealed roof spaces such that any horizontal area does
1537 not exceed 3,000 square feet (279 m²). *Ventilation* of concealed roof spaces shall be maintained
1538 in accordance with Section 1202.2.1.

1539
1540 **Exception:** Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in
1541 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and provided that in combustible construction
1542 sprinkler protection is provided in the floor space.
1543

1544 **718.4.1 Draftstopping materials.** Materials utilized for draftstopping of attic spaces shall
1545 comply with Section 718.3.1.

1546
1547 **718.4.1.1 Openings.** Openings in the partitions shall be protected by *self-closing*
1548 doors with automatic latches constructed as required for the partitions.

1549 1550 CHAPTER 9 1551 FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

1552 Carryover COG Amendment

1553 **51. Paragraph 901.6.1, “Automatic Sprinkler Systems,” of Subsection 901.6,**
1554 **“Supervisory Service,” of Section 901, “General,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,”**
1555 **of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subparagraph**
1556 **901.6.1.1, “Standpipe Testing,” to read as follows:**

1557
1558 “901.6.1.1 Standpipe testing. Maintenance of standpipes shall be as per Section 905.12.”
1559

1560 Carryover COG Amendment

1561 **52. Section 901, “General,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021**
1562 **International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subsection 901.8, “Systems Out Of**
1563 **Service,” to read as follows:**

1564 “901.8 Systems out of service. Where a required fire protection system is out of service, or in the
1565 event of an excessive number of activations, the fire department and the fire code official shall be
1566 notified immediately, and where required by the fire code official, the building must either be
1567 evacuated or standby personnel shall be provided for all occupants left unprotected until the
1568 protection has been returned to service. Where utilized, *standby personnel* shall be provided with
1569 at least one approved means for notification of the fire department and their only duty shall be to
1570 perform constant patrols of the protected premises and keep watch for fires.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1571 **Carryover COG Amendment**

1572 **53. Subsection [F] 903.1, “General,” of Section 903, “Automatic Sprinkler**
1573 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
1574 **is amended to read as follows:**

1575 “[F] **903.1 General.** *Automatic sprinkler systems* shall comply with this section.

1576
1577 [F] **903.1.1 Alternative protection.** *Alternative automatic fire-extinguishing systems*
1578 *complying with Section 904 shall be permitted in addition to [instead of] automatic sprinkler*
1579 *protection where recognized by the applicable standard or as [and] approved by the fire code*
1580 *official.*

1581
1582 **903.1.2 Separation.** Areas of buildings protected by automatic sprinklers shall be separated
1583 from unsprinklered areas by fire barriers complying with Section 707 having a minimum fire-
1584 resistance rating of 2 hours.
1585

1586 **Exceptions:**

- 1587
- 1588 1. Open parking garages in accordance with Section 406.5.
 - 1589 2. Special application, spray booth and kitchen hood suppression systems.”

1592 **Carryover COG Amendment**

1593 **54. Subsection [F] 903.2, “Where Required,” of Section 903, “Automatic Sprinkler**
1594 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
1595 **is amended to read as follows:**

1596 “[F] **903.2 Where required.** *Approved automatic sprinkler systems* in new buildings and
1597 structures shall be provided in the locations described in Sections 903.2.1 through 903.2.12.
1598 Automatic sprinklers must not be installed in elevator machine rooms, elevator machine spaces
1599 and elevator hoistways other than pits where such sprinklers would not necessitate shunt trip
1600 requirements under any circumstances. Storage is not allowed within the elevator machine room.
1601 Signage must be provided at the entry to the elevator machine room indicating “ELEVATOR
1602 MACHINERY – NO STORAGE ALLOWED.”
1603

1604 [~~Exception: Spaces or areas in telecommunications buildings used exclusively for~~
1605 ~~telecommunications equipment, associated electrical power distribution equipment, batteries~~
1606 ~~and standby engines, provided those spaces or areas are equipped throughout with an automatic~~
1607 ~~smoke detection system in accordance with Section 907.2 and are separated from the remainder~~
1608 ~~of the building by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section~~

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1609 ~~707 or not less than 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711,~~
1610 ~~or both.]~~
1611

1612 [F] 903.2.1 Group A. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings
1613 and portions thereof used as Group A occupancies as provided in this section.
1614

1615 [F] 903.2.1.1 Group A-1. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout
1616 stories containing Group A-1 occupancies and throughout all stories from the Group A-1
1617 occupancy to and including the levels of exit discharge serving that occupancy where one
1618 of the following conditions exists:
1619

- 1620 1. The fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²);
- 1621 2. The fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more;
- 1622 3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such
1623 occupancies; or
- 1624 4. The fire area contains a multitheater complex.
1625

1626 [F] 903.2.1.2 Group A-2. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout
1627 stories containing Group A-2 occupancies and throughout all stories from the Group A-2
1628 occupancy to and including the levels of exit discharge serving that occupancy where one
1629 of the following conditions exists:

- 1630 1. The fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²);
- 1631 2. The fire area has an occupant load of 100 or more; or
- 1632 3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such
1633 occupancies.
1634

1635 [F] 903.2.1.3 Group A-3. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout
1636 stories containing Group A-3 occupancies and throughout all stories from the Group A-3
1637 occupancy to and including the levels of exit discharge serving that occupancy where one
1638 of the following conditions exists:

- 1639 1. The fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²);
- 1640 2. The fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more; or
- 1641 3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such
1642 occupancies.
1643

1644
1645 [F] 903.2.1.4 Group A-4. An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout
1646 stories containing Group A-4 occupancies and throughout all stories from the Group A-4
1647 occupancy to and including the levels of exit discharge serving that occupancy where one
1648 of the following conditions exists:

- 1649 1. The fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²);
- 1650 2. The fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more; or
- 1651 3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such
1652 occupancies.
1653

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1654 [F] **903.2.1.5 Group A-5.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided for all enclosed
1655 Group A-5 accessory use areas in excess of 1,000 square feet (93 m²).
1656

1657 [F] **903.2.1.5.1 Spaces under grandstands or bleachers:** Enclosed spaces under
1658 grandstands or *bleachers* shall be equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* in
1659 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 where either of the following exist:
1660

- 1661 1. The enclosed area is 1,000 square feet (93 m²) or less and is not constructed in
1662 accordance with Section 1030.1.1.1.
- 1663 2. The enclosed area exceeds 1,000 square feet (93 m²).
1664

1665 [F] **903.2.1.6 Assembly occupancies on roofs.** Where an occupied roof has an assembly
1666 occupancy with an *occupant load* exceeding 100 for Group A-2 and 300 for other Group
1667 A occupancies, all floors between the occupied roof and the *level of exit discharge* shall be
1668 equipped with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or
1669 903.3.1.2.
1670

1671 **Exception:** Open parking garages of Type I or Type II construction.
1672

1673 **903.2.1.7 Multiple fire areas.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided where
1674 multiple fire areas of Group A-1, A-2, A-3, or A-4 occupancies share exit or exit access
1675 components and the combined *occupant load* of these fire areas is 300 or more.
1676

1677 [F] **903.2.2 Ambulatory care facilities.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed
1678 throughout the entire floor containing an *ambulatory care facility* where either of the following
1679 conditions exist at any time:
1680

- 1681 1. Four or more care recipients are incapable of self-preservation, whether rendered
1682 incapable by staff or staff has accepted responsibility for care recipients already
1683 incapable.
- 1684 2. One or more care recipients that are incapable of self-preservation are located at other
1685 than the level of exit discharge serving such a facility.
1686

1687 In buildings where ambulatory care is provided on levels other than the *level of exit*
1688 *discharge*, an *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed throughout the entire floor where
1689 such care is provided as well as all floors below, and all floors between the level of ambulatory
1690 care and the nearest *level of exit discharge*, including the *level of exit discharge*.
1691

1692 **Exception:** Floors classified as an open parking garage are not required to be
1693 sprinklered.
1694

1695 [F] **903.2.3 Group E.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided for Group E
1696 occupancies as follows:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 1697 1. Throughout all Group E *fire areas* greater than 12,000 square feet (1115 m²) in area.
1698
1699 2. The Group E fire area is located on a floor other than a *level of exit discharge* serving
1700 such occupancies.
1701

1702 **Exception:** In buildings where every classroom has not fewer than one exterior exit
1703 door at ground level, an *automatic sprinkler system* is not required in any area
1704 below the lowest *level of exit discharge* serving that area.
1705

- 1706 3. The Group E fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more.
1707

1708 **[F] 903.2.4 Group F-1.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout all
1709 buildings containing a Group F-1 occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:
1710

- 1711 1. A Group F-1 *fire area* exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
1712
1713 2. A Group F-1 *fire area* is located more than three stories above *grade plane*.
1714
1715 3. The combined area of all Group F-1 *fire areas* on all floors, including any mezzanines,
1716 exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m²).
1717

1718 **[F] 903.2.4.1 Woodworking operations.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided
1719 throughout all Group F-1 occupancy *fire areas* that contain wood-working operations in
1720 excess of 2,500 square feet (232 m²) in area that generate finely divided combustible waste
1721 or use finely divided combustible materials.
1722

1723 **New COG Amendment**

1724 **[F] 903.2.4.2 Group F-1 distilled spirits.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided
1725 throughout a Group F-1 *fire area* used for the manufacture of distilled spirits involving
1726 more than 120 gallons of distilled spirits (>16% alcohol) in the fire area at any one time.
1727

1728 **[F] 903.2.4.3 Group F-1 upholstered furniture or mattresses.** An *automatic sprinkler*
1729 *system* shall be provided throughout a Group F-1 *fire area* that exceeds 2,500 square feet
1730 (232 m²) used for the manufacture of upholstered furniture or mattresses.
1731

1732 **[F] 903.2.5 Group H.** *Automatic sprinkler systems* shall be provided in high-hazard
1733 occupancies as required in Sections 903.2.5.1 through 903.2.5.3.
1734

1735 **[F] 903.2.5.1 General.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed in Group H
1736 occupancies.
1737

1738 **[F] 903.2.5.2 Group H-5 occupancies.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed
1739 throughout buildings containing Group H-5 occupancies. The design of the sprinkler
1740 system shall not be less than that required by this code for the occupancy hazard
1741 classifications in accordance with Table 903.2.5.2.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1742 Where the design area of the sprinkler system consists of a *corridor* protected by one
1743 row of sprinklers, the maximum number of sprinklers required to be calculated is 13.
1744

1745 **[F] 903.2.5.3 Pyroxylin plastics.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided in
1746 buildings, or portions thereof, where cellulose nitrate film or pyroxylin plastics are
1747 manufactured, stored or handled in quantities exceeding 100 pounds (45 kg).
1748

1749 **[F] 903.2.6 Group I.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout buildings
1750 with a Group I *fire area*.
1751

1752 **Exceptions:**

- 1753 1. An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 shall
1754 be permitted in Group I-1 Condition 1 facilities.
1755
- 1756 2. An *automatic sprinkler system* is not required where Group I-4 day care facilities
1757 are at the *level of exit discharge* and where every room where care is provided has
1758 not fewer than one exterior exit door.
1759
- 1760 3. In buildings where Group I-4 day care is provided on levels other than the *level of*
1761 *exit discharge*, an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1
1762 shall be installed on the entire floor where care is provided, all floors between the
1763 level of care and the level of *exit discharge*, and all floors below the *level of exit*
1764 *discharge* other than areas classified as an open parking garage.
1765
1766

1767 **[F] 903.2.7 Group M.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout buildings
1768 containing a Group M occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:
1769

- 1770 1. A Group M *fire area* exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
1771
- 1772 2. A Group M *fire area* is located more than three stories above *grade plane*.
1773
- 1774 3. The combined area of all Group M *fire areas* on all floors, including any mezzanines,
1775 exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m²).
1776

1777 **[F] 903.2.7.1 High-piled storage.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided in
1778 accordance with the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code* in all buildings of Group M where
1779 storage of merchandise is in high-piled or rack storage arrays.
1780

1781 **[F] 903.2.7.2 Group M upholstered furniture or mattresses.** An *automatic sprinkler*
1782 *system* shall be provided throughout a Group M *fire area* where the area used for the display
1783 and sale of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²).

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1784 [F] **903.2.8 Group R.** An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section
1785 903.3 shall be provided throughout all buildings with a Group R *fire area*.
1786

1787 **Exception:** A *dwelling, townhome, townhouse, Group R-4 care facility with five or fewer*
1788 *persons that are within a single family or lodging house which complies with Section*
1789 *903.2.13.*
1790

1791 [F] **903.2.8.1 Group R-3.** An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with
1792 Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in Group R-3 occupancies.
1793

1794 [F] **903.2.8.2 Group R-4 Condition 1.** An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in
1795 accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in Group R-4 Condition 1
1796 occupancies.
1797

1798 [F] **903.2.8.3 Group R-4 Condition 2.** An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in
1799 accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 shall be permitted in Group R-4 Condition 2
1800 occupancies.
1801

1802 [F] **903.2.8.4 Care facilities.** An *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with
1803 Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in care facilities with five or fewer individuals in a
1804 single-family dwelling.
1805

1806 [F] **903.2.9 Group S-1.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout all
1807 buildings containing a Group S-1 occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:
1808

- 1809 1. A Group S-1 *fire area* exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
- 1810 2. A Group S-1 *fire area* is located more than three stories above *grade plane*.
- 1811 3. The combined area of all Group S-1 *fire areas* on all floors, including any mezzanines,
1812 exceeds 24,000 square feet (2230 m²).
- 1813 4. A Group S-1 *fire area* used for the storage of commercial motor vehicles where the *fire*
1814 *area* exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²).
- 1815

1816 [F] **903.2.9.1 Repair garages.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be provided
1817 throughout all buildings used as repair garages in accordance with Section 406, as shown:
1818

- 1819 1. Buildings having two or more *stories above grade plane*, including basements, with
1820 a *fire area* containing a repair garage exceeding 10,000 square feet (929 m²).
- 1821 2. Buildings not more than one *story above grade plane*, with a *fire area* containing a
1822 repair garage exceeding 12,000 square feet (1115 m²).
- 1823 3. Buildings with repair garages servicing vehicles parked in basements.
1824
- 1825
- 1826
- 1827
- 1828

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 1829 4. A Group S-1 *fire area* used for the repair of commercial motor vehicles where the
1830 *fire area* exceeds 5,000 square feet (464 m²).

1831
1832 [F] **903.2.9.2 Bulk storage of tires.** Buildings and structures where the area for the storage
1833 of tires exceeds 20,000 cubic feet (566 m³) shall be equipped throughout with an *automatic*
1834 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

1835 **New COG amendment**

1836
1837 [F] **903.2.9.3 Group S-1 Distilled spirits or wine.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be
1838 provided throughout a Group S-1 *fire area* used for the bulk storage of distilled spirits or
1839 wine involving more than 120 gallons of distilled spirits or wine (>16% alcohol) in the fire
1840 area at any one time.

1841 **Carryover COG amendment**

1842
1843 [F] **903.2.9.4 Group S-1 upholstered furniture and mattresses.** An *automatic sprinkler*
1844 *system* shall be provided throughout a Group S-1 *fire area* where the area used for the
1845 storage of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 2,500 square feet (232 m²). This use
1846 must also comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 32, “High-Pile Combustible
1847 Storage,” of the Dallas Fire Code due to the presence of Group A plastics used in
1848 upholstered furniture and mattresses.

1849 **Exception removed due to COG amendment below**

1850 ~~**Exception:** Self storage facilities not greater than one story above grade plane where~~
1851 ~~all storage spaces can be accessed directly from the exterior.~~

1852 **Carryover COG amendment**

1853
1854 **903.2.9.5 Self-service storage facilities.** An *automatic sprinkler system* must be installed
1855 throughout all self-service storage facilities.

1856
1857 [F] **903.2.10 Group S-2 enclosed parking garages.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be
1858 provided throughout buildings classified as enclosed parking garages in accordance with
1859 Section 406.4 406.6 where either of the following conditions exists:

- 1860
1861 1. Where the *fire area* of the enclosed parking garage in accordance with Section 406.4
1862 exceeds 12,000 square feet (1115 m²)
1863 2. Where the enclosed parking garage in accordance with Section 406.6 is located beneath
1864 other groups.

1865 **Exception:** Enclosed parking garages located beneath Group R-3
1866 occupancies.

- 1867
1868 3. Where the fire area of the open parking garage in accordance with Section 406.5
1869 exceeds 48,000 square feet (4460 m²)

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1870 [F] **903.2.10.1 Commercial parking garages.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be
1871 provided throughout buildings used for storage of commercial motor vehicles where the
1872 *fire area* exceeds 5,000 square feet (4464 m²).
1873

1874 [F] **903.2.10.2 Mechanical-access enclosed parking garages.** An *approved automatic*
1875 *sprinkler system* shall be provided throughout buildings used for the storage of motor
1876 vehicles in a *mechanical-access enclosed parking garage*. The portion of the building that
1877 contains the *mechanical-access enclosed parking garage* shall be protected with a specially
1878 engineered *automatic sprinkler system*.
1879

1880 [F] **903.2.11 Specific building areas and hazards.** In all occupancies other than Group U, an
1881 *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed for building design or hazards in the locations set
1882 forth in Sections 903.2.11.1 through 903.2.11.8 [~~903.2.11.6~~].
1883

1884 [F] **903.2.11.1 Stories without openings.** An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed
1885 throughout all *stories*, including basements, of all buildings where the floor area exceeds
1886 1,500 square feet (139.4 m²) and where the story does not comply with the following types
1887 of *exterior wall* openings:
1888

- 1889 1. Openings below grade that lead directly to ground level by an exterior *stairway*
1890 complying with Section 1011 or an outside ramp complying with Section 1012.
1891 Openings shall be located in each 50 linear feet (15 240 mm), or fraction thereof,
1892 of *exterior wall* in the *story* on at least one side. The required openings shall be
1893 distributed such that the lineal distance between adjacent openings does not exceed
1894 50 feet (15 240 mm).
1895
- 1896 2. Openings entirely above the adjoining ground level totaling at least 20 square feet
1897 (1.86 m²) in each 50 linear feet (15 240 mm), or fraction thereof, of *exterior wall*
1898 in the *story* on at least one side. The required openings shall be distributed such
1899 that the lineal distance between adjacent openings does not exceed 50 feet (15 240
1900 mm). The height of the bottom of the clear opening shall not exceed 44 inches
1901 (1118 mm) measured from the floor.
1902

1903 [F] **903.2.11.1.1 Opening dimensions and access.** Openings shall have a minimum
1904 dimension of not less than 30 inches (762 mm). Access to such openings shall be
1905 provided for fire department from the exterior and shall not be obstructed in a manner
1906 that firefighting or rescue cannot be accomplished from the exterior.
1907

1908 [F] **903.2.11.1.2. Openings on one side only.** Where openings in a *story* are provided
1909 on only one side and the opposite wall of such *story* is more than 75 feet (22 860 mm)
1910 from such openings, the *story* shall be equipped throughout with an *approved automatic*
1911 *sprinkler system*, or openings as specified above shall be provided on at least two sides
1912 of the *story*.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1913 [F] 903.2.11.1.3 Basements. Where any portion of a *basement* is located more than 75
1914 feet (22 860 mm) from openings required by Section 903.2.11.1, or where walls,
1915 partitions or other obstructions are installed that restrict the application of water from
1916 hose streams, the *basement* shall be equipped throughout with an *approved automatic*
1917 *sprinkler system*.
1918

1919 [F] 903.2.11.2 Rubbish and linen chutes. An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed
1920 at the top of rubbish and linen chutes and in their terminal rooms. Chutes shall have
1921 additional sprinkler heads installed at alternate floors and at the lowest intake. Where a
1922 rubbish chute extends through a building more than one floor below the lowest intake, the
1923 extension shall have sprinklers installed that are recessed from the drop area of the chute
1924 and protected from freezing in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Such sprinklers shall be
1925 installed at alternate floors, beginning with the second level below the last intake and
1926 ending with the floor above the discharge. Access to sprinklers in chutes shall be provided
1927 for servicing.
1928

1929 Carryover COG Amendment

1930 [F] 903.2.11.3 Buildings 55 feet or more in height. An *automatic sprinkler system* shall
1931 be installed throughout buildings that have one or more stories other than penthouses in
1932 compliance with Section 1511 [~~with an occupant load of 30 or more~~] located 55 feet (16
1933 764 mm) or more above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, measured to the
1934 finished floor. Carryover
1935

1936 [~~Exception: Occupancies in Group F-2.~~]

1948 [F] 903.2.11.4 Ducts conveying hazardous exhausts. Where required by the *Dallas*
1949 [~~International~~] *Mechanical Code*, automatic sprinklers shall be provided in ducts
1950 conveying hazardous exhaust or flammable or combustible materials.
1951

1952 **Exception:** Ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is less than 10
1953 inches (254 mm).
1954

1955 [F] 903.2.11.5 Commercial cooking operations. An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be
1956 installed in commercial kitchen exhaust and duct systems where an *automatic sprinkler*
1957 *system* is used to comply with Section 904.
1958

1959 [F] 903.2.11.6 Other required suppression systems. In addition to the requirements of
1960 Section 903.2, the provisions indicated in Table 903.2.11.6 require the installation of a fire
1961 suppression system for certain buildings and areas.
1962

1963 Carryover COG Amendments

1964 **903.2.11.7 High-piled combustible storage.** For any building with a clear height
1965 exceeding 12 feet (4572 mm), see Chapter 32 of the *Dallas Fire Code* to determine if those
1966 provisions apply.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

1967
1968
1969
1970
1971
1972
1973
1974

Carryover COG Amendments

903.2.11.8 Spray booths and rooms. New and existing spray booths and spraying rooms must be protected by an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system.

[F] 903.2.12 During construction. *Automatic sprinkler systems* required during construction, alteration and demolition operations shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 33 of the *Dallas [International] Fire Code*.

1975
1976
1977
1978
1979
1980
1981

Carryover Dallas Amendment and update per June 13, 2022 Amendments

903.2.13 Nonsprinklered b[B]uilding fire areas. Any qualified building area must provide a minimum number of fire walls throughout the building such that no building fire area exceeds the limits of the number listed in Table 903.2.13. Qualified building area is the total allowable area which has been determined first by the methods of increase as given in Section 506 without using the increases for sprinklers.

1982
1983
1984

Exception: Fire walls are not required in accordance with this section in any of the following cases:

1985
1986
1987
1988
1989
1990
1991

1. Buildings that have an approved automatic sprinkler system installed throughout in accordance with Sections 903.3.1.1 and 903.3.1.2.

2. Open air portions of Group A, Division 5 occupancies.

3. Open parking garages complying with Section 406.5.

1992
1993
1994
1995

4. Buildings of Type I or Type II construction used exclusively for noncombustible contents or the storage of noncombustible material not packed or crated in combustible material.

1996
1997
1998
1999
2000

5. The floor area of existing nonsprinklered buildings housing other than Group H occupancies may be increased by not more than 5 percent. The floor area increase must not exceed 2,500 square feet (232.25 m²). Not more than one increase in floor area is permitted under this exception.

2001
2002

6. Membrane structures when authorized by the building official”

2003
2004

Carryover Dallas Amendment and June 13, 2022 Amendments

55. Subsection [F] 903.2, “Where Required,” of Section 903, “Automatic Sprinkler

2005
2006
2007

Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Table 903.2.13, “Building Fire Area Limits (Sq. Ft.),” to read as follows:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

“TABLE 903.2.13

NONSPRINKLERED BUILDING FIRE AREA LIMITS (SQ. FT.)

GROUP	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION									
	TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV	TYPE V		
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A-C	HT	A	B
A ¹	25,000	25,000	15,000	8,500	14,000	8,500	<u>NP</u>	15,000	11,500	5,500
A ^{2,3}	25,000	25,000	15,000	8,500	15,000	8,500	<u>NP</u>	15,000	15,000	5,500
A ⁴ , F, M, S-1, S-2 ⁵	25,000	25,000	15,000	10,000	15,000	10,000	<u>NP</u>	15,000	15,000	7,500
A-4 ⁶	@	@	@	@	@	@	<u>NP</u>	@	@	@
A-5 ⁷ , B ⁸ , E	35,000	35,000	20,000	15,000	20,000	15,000	<u>NP</u>	20,000	15,000	7,500
B ⁹	25,000	25,000	15,000	10,000	15,000	10,000	<u>NP</u>	15,000	15,000	7,500
H, I-1, I-3, I-4	0	0	0	0	0	0	<u>NP</u>	0	0	0
I-2	0	0	0	0	0	NP	<u>NP</u>	0	0	NP
R	7,500	7,500	7,500	7,500	7,500	7,500	<u>NP</u>	7,500	7,500	7,500
U ¹⁰	@	@	@	@	@	@	<u>NP</u>	@	@	@
U ^{11, 12}	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	<u>NP</u>	N/A	N/A	N/A

2010 For SI: 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

2011 NP: Not Permitted

2012 NA: Not Applicable

2013 1. Assembly with a stage and occupant load of 1,000 or more.

2014 2. Assembly with a stage and occupant load of less than 1,000.

2015 3. Assembly without a stage with occupant load of 300 or more.

2016 4. Assembly without a stage with occupant load of less than 300.

2017 5. Open parking garages. See Sections 406.5, 403.1, and 903.2.13, Exception 3.

2018 6. Indoor sports, see Footnote 1, 2, 3 or 4, as appropriate.

2019 7. Stadiums, reviewing stands, amusement park structures not with other A occupancy. See Sections
2020 903.2.13 and 403.1.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 2021 8. Office buildings, police and fire stations, buildings with rooms used for education beyond 12th grade
2022 with less than 50 persons.
2023 9. All other B occupancies.
2024 10. Private garages and carports. See Section 406.3.
2025 11. Fences over 6 feet high, tanks, sheds and agricultural buildings not classifiable in other occupancies.
2026 12. Towers, See Section 412.”

2027 **Carryover COG Amendments, COG updated #3**

2028 **56. Subsection [F] 903.3, “Installation Requirements,” of Section 903, “Automatic** 2029 **Sprinkler Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International** 2030 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

2031
2032 “[F] 903.3 **Installation requirements.** *Automatic sprinkler systems* shall be designed and installed
2033 in accordance with Sections 903.3.1 through 903.3.8.

2034
2035 [F] 903.3.1 **Standards.** Sprinkler systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with
2036 Section 903.3.1.1 unless otherwise permitted by Sections 903.3.1.2 and 903.3.1.3 and other
2037 chapters of this code, as applicable.

2038
2039 [F] 903.3.1.1 **NFPA 13 sprinkler systems.** Where the provisions of this code require that
2040 a building or portion thereof be equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in
2041 accordance with this section, sprinklers shall be installed throughout in accordance with
2042 NFPA 13 except as provided in Sections 903.3.1.1.1 and 903.3.1.1.2.

2043
2044 [F] 903.3.1.1.1 **Exempt locations.** When approved by the fire code official,
2045 a[A]utomatic sprinklers shall not be required in the following rooms or areas where
2046 such rooms or areas are protected with an *approved* automatic fire detection system in
2047 accordance with Section 907.2 that will respond to visible or invisible particles of
2048 combustion. Sprinklers shall not be omitted from a room merely because it is damp, of
2049 fire-resistance-rated construction or contains electrical equipment.

- 2050
2051 1. A room where the application of water, or flame and water, constitutes a serious
2052 life or fire hazard.
2053
2054 2. A room or space where sprinklers are considered undesirable because of the
2055 nature of the contents, when *approved* by the fire code official.
2056
2057 3. Generator and transformer rooms, under the direct control of a public utility,
2058 separated from the remainder of the building by walls and floor/ceiling or
2059 roof/ceiling assemblies having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 2 hours.
2060 The phrase in the middle

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 2061 4. ~~[Rooms or areas that are of noncombustible construction with wholly~~
2062 ~~noncombustible contents.~~
- 2064 5. ~~Fire service access.]~~ E[~~e~~]levator machine rooms, [~~and~~] machinery spaces and
2065 hoistways, other than pits where such sprinklers would not necessitate shunt
2066 trip requirements under any circumstances.
- 2068 6. ~~Machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces associated~~
2069 ~~with occupant evacuation elevators designed in accordance with Section 3008.~~
2070

2071 ~~[~~F~~]903.3.1.1.2. [~~Bathrooms.~~ In Group R occupancies sprinklers shall not be required~~
2072 ~~in bathrooms that do not exceed 55 square feet (5 m²) in area and are located within~~
2073 ~~individual *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*, provided that walls and ceilings, including~~
2074 ~~the walls and ceilings behind a shower enclosure or tub, are of noncombustible or~~
2075 ~~limited combustible materials with a 15-minute thermal barrier rating.]~~
2076

2077 [~~F~~]903.3.1.1.2. **Residential systems.** Residential sprinkler systems installed in
2078 accordance with Sections 903.3.1.2 and 903.3.1.3 will be recognized for the purposes
2079 of exceptions or reductions, commonly referred to as “trade-offs,” only if permitted by
2080 other provisions of this code.
2081

2082 **Carryover COG Amendments**

2083 **[F] 903.3.1.2 NFPA 13R sprinkler systems.** *Automatic sprinkler systems* in Group R
2084 occupancies up to and including four stories in height in buildings not exceeding 60 feet
2085 (18 288 mm) in height above grade plane shall be permitted to be installed throughout in
2086 accordance with NFPA 13R where the Group R occupancy meets all of the following
2087 conditions. Refer also to Section 903.3.1.1.2.
2088

- 2089 1. Four stories or fewer above *grade plane*.
- 2090 2. The floor level of the highest *story* is ~~30~~ 35 feet (9144 ~~10668~~ mm) or less above the
2091 lowest level of fire department vehicle access.
- 2092 3. The floor level of the lowest *story* is ~~30~~ 35 feet (9144 ~~10668~~ mm) or less below the
2093 lowest level of fire department vehicle access.
2094

2095 The number of stories of Group R occupancies constructed in accordance with Sections
2096 510.2 and 510.4 shall be measured from the horizontal assembly creating separate
2097 buildings.
2098

2099 **[F] 903.3.1.2.1 Balconies and decks.** Sprinkler protection shall be provided for
2100 exterior balconies, decks and ground floor patios of *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*
2101 where either of the following conditions exists:
2102

- 2103 1. The building is of Type V construction, provided there is a roof or deck
2104 above.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2105 2. Exterior balconies, decks and ground floor patios of dwelling units and
2106 sleeping units are constructed in accordance with Section 705.2.3.1,
2107 exception 3.
2108

2109 Sidewall sprinklers that are used to protect such areas shall be permitted to be
2110 located such that their deflectors are within 1 inch (25 mm) to 6 inches (152 mm)
2111 below the structural members and a maximum distance of 14 inches (356 mm) below
2112 the deck of the exterior balconies and decks that are constructed of open wood joist
2113 construction.
2114

New COG Amendment – Updated with new language in IBC 2021

2115 **[F] 903.3.1.2.2 Corridors and balconies in the means of egress.** Sprinkler protection
2116 shall be provided in all corridors and for all balconies. ~~in the means of egress where~~
2117 ~~any of the following conditions apply:~~
2118
2119

2120 1. ~~Corridors with combustible floor and walls.~~
2121

2122 2. ~~Corridors with an interior change of direction exceeding 45 degrees (0.79~~
2123 ~~rad).~~
2124

2125 3. ~~Corridors that are less than 50 percent open to the outside atmosphere at~~
2126 ~~the ends.~~
2127

2128 4. ~~Open ended corridors and associated exterior stairways and ramps as~~
2129 ~~specified in Section 1027.6, Exception 3.~~
2130

2131 5. ~~Egress balconies not complying with Sections 1021.2 and 1021.3.~~
2132

New/Updated COG Amendment – Updated with new language in IBC 2021

2133 **[F] 903.3.1.2.3 Attics.** ~~Attic protection shall be provided as follows:~~ **Attached**
2134 **Garages and Attics.** Sprinkler protection is required in attached garages, and in the
2135 following attic spaces:
2136
2137

2138 1. *Attics* that are used or intended for living purposes or storage shall be
2139 protected by an *automatic sprinkler system*.
2140

2141 2. Where fuel-fired equipment is installed in an unsprinklered *attic*, not
2142 fewer than one quick-response intermediate temperature sprinkler shall be
2143 installed above equipment.
2144

2145 3. ~~Where located in a building Type III, Type IV or Type V construction~~
2146 ~~designed in accordance with Section 510.2 or 510.4, attics not required by~~
2147 ~~Item 1 to have sprinklers shall comply with one of the following if the roof~~
2148 ~~assembly is located more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above the lowest level~~

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2149 of fire department vehicle access needed to meet the provisions in Section
2150 503.

2151 3.1 Provide ~~automatic sprinkler system~~ protection.

2152 3.2 Construct the ~~attic~~ using noncombustible materials.

2153 3.3 Construct the ~~attic~~ using ~~fire-retardant-treated~~ wood
2154 complying with Section 2303.2.

2155 3.4 Fill the ~~attic~~ with noncombustible insulation.

2156

2157 3. Attic spaces of buildings that are two or more stories in height above grade
2158 plane or above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

2159 The height of the roof assembly shall be determined by measuring
2160 the distance from the lowest required fire vehicle access road surface
2161 adjacent to the building to the eave of the highest pitched roof, the
2162 intersection of the highest roof to the exterior wall, or the top of the highest
2163 parapet, whichever yields the greatest distance. For the purpose of this
2164 measurement, required fire vehicle access roads shall include only those
2165 roads that are necessary for compliance with Section 503 of the
2166 *International Fire Code*.

2167

2168 4. Group R-4, Condition 2 occupancy *attics* not required by Item 1 or 3 to
2169 have sprinklers shall comply with one of the following:

2170

2171 4.1. Provide *automatic sprinkler system* protection.

2172 4.2. Provide a heat detection system throughout the *attic* that is
2173 arranged to activate the building fire alarm system.

2174 4.3. Construct the *attic* using non-combustible materials.

2175 4.4. Construct the *attic* using *fire-retardant-treated wood*
2176 complying with Section 2303.2 of the Dallas Building Code.

2177 4.5. Fill the *attic* with noncombustible insulation.

2178

2179

Carryover COG Amendment

2180 [F] **903.3.1.3 NFPA 13D sprinkler systems.** *Automatic sprinkler systems* installed in one-
2181 and two-family *dwelling*s; Group R-3, Group R-4 Condition 1 and *townhouses* shall be
2182 permitted to be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13D or in accordance with
2183 state law. Refer also to Section 903.3.1.1.2.

2184

2185 [F] **903.3.1.4 Freeze protection.** Freeze protection systems for automatic fire sprinkler
2186 systems shall be in accordance with the requirements of the applicable referenced NFPA
2187 standard and this section.

2188

2189 **903.3.1.4.1 Attics.** Only dry-pipe, pre-action or listed antifreeze automatic fire
2190 sprinkler systems shall be allowed to protect attic spaces.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2191 **Exception:** Wet-pipe fire sprinkler systems shall be allowed to protect non-ventilated
2192 attic spaces where:
2193

2194 1. the attic sprinklers are supplied by a separate floor control valve assembly to
2195 allow ease of draining the attic system without impairing sprinklers throughout
2196 the rest of the building,
2197

2198 2. adequate heat is provided for freeze protection in accordance with the applicable
2199 referenced NFPA standard, and
2200

2201 3. the attic space is a part of the building's thermal, or heat, envelope, such that
2202 insulation is provided at the roof deck, rather than at the ceiling level.
2203

2204 **903.3.1.4.2 Heat trace/insulation.** Heat trace/insulation shall only be allowed where
2205 approved by the fire code official for small sections of large diameter water-filled pipe.
2206

2207 **[F] 903.3.2 Quick-response and residential sprinklers.** Where *automatic sprinkler systems*
2208 are required by this code, quick-response or residential automatic sprinklers shall be installed
2209 in the following areas in accordance with Section 903.3.1 and their listings:
2210

2211 1. Throughout all spaces within a smoke compartment containing care recipient *sleeping*
2212 *units* in Group I-2 in accordance with this code.
2213

2214 2. Throughout all spaces within a *smoke compartment containing* gas fireplace appliances
2215 and decorative gas appliances in Group I-2.
2216

2217 3. Throughout all spaces within a smoke compartment containing treatment rooms in
2218 ambulatory care facilities.
2219

2220 4. *Dwelling units* and *sleeping units* in Group I-1 and R occupancies.
2221

2222 5. Light-hazard occupancies as defined in NFPA 13.
2223

2224 **[F] 903.3.3 Obstructed locations.** Automatic sprinklers shall be installed with regard to
2225 obstructions that will delay activation or obstruct the water distribution pattern and shall be in
2226 accordance with the applicable *automatic sprinkler system* standard that is being used.
2227 Automatic sprinklers shall be installed in or under covered kiosks, displays, booths, concession
2228 stands, or equipment that exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm) in width. Not less than a 3-foot (914 mm)
2229 clearance shall be maintained between automatic sprinklers and the top of piles of combustible
2230 fibers.
2231

2232 **Exception:** Kitchen equipment under exhaust hoods protected with a fire-extinguishing
2233 system in accordance with Section 904.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2234 [F] **903.3.4 Actuation.** *Automatic sprinkler systems* shall be automatically actuated unless
2235 specifically provided for in this code.

2236
2237 [F] **903.3.5 Water supplies.** Water supplies for *automatic sprinkler systems* shall comply with
2238 this section and the standards referenced in Section 903.3.1. The potable water supply shall be
2239 protected against backflow in accordance with the requirements of this section and the *Dallas*
2240 [~~*International*~~] *Plumbing Code*. For connections to public waterworks systems, the water
2241 supply test used for design of fire protection systems shall be adjusted to account for seasonal
2242 and daily pressure fluctuations based on information from the water supply authority and as
2243 approved by the fire code official.

2244 **Carryover COG Amendment**

2245 Water supply as required for such systems shall be provided in conformance with the supply
2246 requirements of the respective standards; however, every fire protection system shall be
2247 designed with a 10 psi (69 Pa) safety factor. Where a waterflow test is used for the purposes
2248 of system design, the test shall be conducted no more than 12 months prior to working plan
2249 submittal unless otherwise approved by the authority having jurisdiction. Refer to Section
2250 507.4 for additional design requirements.

2251
2252
2253 [F] **903.3.5.1 Domestic services.** Where the domestic service provides the water supply
2254 for the *automatic sprinkler system*, the supply shall be in accordance with this section.

2255 [F] **903.3.5.2 [~~Residential-e~~] Combination services.** In all NFPA 13 and 13R designs,
2256 a[A] single combination water supply shall be allowed provided that the domestic demand
2257 is added to the sprinkler demand as required by NFPA 13, 13R, and 13D. Combination
2258 services four inches and larger shall be subject to the acceptance tests contained in the
2259 installation standards. Acceptance tests shall be witnessed and approved by the fire code
2260 official.

2261
2262 [F] **903.3.6 Hose threads.** Fire hose threads and fittings used in connection with *automatic*
2263 *sprinkler systems* shall be as prescribed by the fire code official.

2264
2265 [F] **903.3.7 Fire department connections.** Fire department connections for *automatic*
2266 *sprinkler systems* shall be installed in accordance with Section 912.

2267
2268 [F] **903.3.8 Limited area sprinkler systems.** Limited area sprinkler systems shall be in
2269 accordance with the standards listed in Section 903.3.1 except as provided in Sections
2270 903.3.8.1 through 903.3.8.5.

2271
2272 **903.3.8.1 Number of sprinklers.** Limited area sprinkler systems shall not exceed six
2273 sprinklers in any single *fire area*.

2274
2275 **903.3.8.2 Occupancy hazard classification.** Only areas classified by NFPA 13 as Light
2276 Hazard or Ordinary Hazard Group 1 shall be permitted to be protected by limited area
2277 sprinkler systems.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2278 **903.3.8.3 Piping arrangement.** Where a limited area sprinkler system is installed in a
2279 building with an automatic wet standpipe system, sprinklers shall be supplied by the
2280 standpipe system. Where a limited area sprinkler system is installed in a building without
2281 an automatic wet standpipe system, water shall be permitted to be supplied by the plumbing
2282 system provided that the plumbing system is capable of simultaneously supplying domestic
2283 and sprinkler demands.

2284
2285 **903.3.8.4 Supervision.** Control valves shall not be installed between the water supply and
2286 sprinklers unless the valves are of an *approved* indicating type that are supervised or
2287 secured in the open position.

2288
2289 **903.3.8.5 Calculations.** Hydraulic calculations in accordance with NFPA 13 shall be
2290 provided to demonstrate that the available water flow and pressure are adequate to supply
2291 all sprinklers installed in any single *fire area* with discharge densities corresponding to the
2292 hazard classification.”

2293 **Carryover COG Amendments**

2294 **57. Subsection [F] 903.4, “Sprinkler System Supervision and Alarms,” of Section**

2295 **903, “Automatic Sprinkler Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021**

2296 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

2297
2298 **“[F] 903.4 Sprinkler system supervision and alarms.** All v[~~X~~]alves on the building side of the
2299 water meter controlling the water supply for *automatic sprinkler systems*, pumps, tanks, water
2300 levels and temperatures, critical air pressures and waterflow switches on all sprinkler systems shall
2301 be electrically supervised by a *listed* fire alarm control unit.

2302 **Exceptions:**

- 2303 1. *Automatic sprinkler systems* protecting one- and two-family *dwelling*s.
- 2304 2. Limited area sprinkler systems in accordance with Section 903.3.8.
- 2305 3. *Automatic sprinkler systems* installed in accordance with NFPA 13R where a common
2306 supply main is used to supply both domestic water and the *automatic sprinkler system*,
2307 and a separate shutoff valve for the *automatic sprinkler system* is not provided.
- 2308 4. Jockey pump control valves that are sealed or locked in the open position.
- 2309 5. Control valves to commercial kitchen hoods, paint spray booths or dip tanks that are
2310 sealed or locked in the open position.
- 2311 6. Valves controlling the fuel supply to fire pump engines that are sealed or locked in the
2312 open position.
- 2313
- 2314
- 2315
- 2316
- 2317
- 2318
- 2319

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2320 7. Trim valves to pressure switches in dry, preaction and deluge sprinkler systems that are
2321 sealed or locked in the open position.

2322
2323 8. Underground key or hub gate valves in roadway boxes.
2324

2325 Sprinkler and standpipe system water-flow detectors must be provided for each floor tap to the
2326 sprinkler system and must cause an alarm upon detection of water flow for more than 45 seconds.
2327 All control valves in the sprinkler and standpipe systems except for fire department hose
2328 connection valves must be electrically supervised to initiate a supervisory signal at the central
2329 station upon tampering.
2330

2331 [F] 903.4.1 **Monitoring.** Alarm, supervisory and trouble signals shall be distinctly different
2332 and shall be automatically transmitted to an *approved* supervising station or, where *approved*
2333 by the fire code official, shall sound an audible signal at a *constantly attended location*.
2334

2335 **Exceptions:**

- 2336
- 2337 1. Underground key or hub valves in roadway boxes provided by the municipality or
2338 public utility are not required to be monitored.
2339
 - 2340 2. Backflow prevention device test valves located in limited area sprinkler system
2341 supply piping shall be locked in the open position. In occupancies required to be
2342 equipped with a fire alarm system, the backflow preventer valves shall be
2343 electrically supervised by a tamper switch installed in accordance with NFPA 72
2344 and separately annunciated.
2345

2346 [F] 903.4.2 **Alarms.** A weatherproof horn/strobe notification appliance with a minimum 75
2347 candela strobe rating, installed as close as practicable to the fire department connection [~~An~~
2348 ~~approved audible device, located on the exterior of the building in an approved location,~~] shall
2349 be connected to every [each] automatic sprinkler system. Such sprinkler waterflow alarm
2350 devices shall be activated by water flow equivalent to the flow of a single sprinkler of the
2351 smallest orifice size installed in the system. Where a fire alarm system is installed, actuation
2352 of the *automatic sprinkler system* shall actuate the building fire alarm system.
2353

2354 [F] 903.4.3 **Floor control valves.** *Approved* supervised indicating control valves shall be
2355 provided at the point of connection to the riser on each floor in high-rise-buildings.”
2356

2357 [F] 903.5 **Testing and maintenance.** Sprinkler systems shall be tested and maintained in
2358 accordance with the [*International*] Dallas Fire Code.
2359

2360 **Carryover COG Amendments**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2361 **58. Subsection [F] 905.2, “Installation Standard,” of Section 905, “Standpipe**
2362 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2363 **is amended to read as follows:**

2364 “[F] **905.2 Installation standard.** Standpipe systems shall be installed in accordance with this
2365 section and NFPA 14. Manual dry standpipe systems shall be supervised with a minimum of 10
2366 psig (69 kPa) and a maximum of 40 psig (276 kPa) air pressure with a high/low alarm. Fire
2367 department connections for standpipe systems shall be in accordance with Section 912.”

2368

2369 **Carryover COG Amendments**

2370 **59. Subsection [F] 905.3, “Required Installations,” of Section 905, “Standpipe**
2371 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2372 **is amended to read as follows:**

2373 “[F] **905.3 Required installations.** Standpipe systems shall be installed where required by
2374 Sections 905.3.1 through 905.3.9 [~~905.3.8~~]. Standpipe systems are allowed to be combined with
2375 *automatic sprinkler systems*.

2376

2377 **Exception:** Standpipe systems are not required in Group R-3 occupancies.

2378

2379 **[F] 905.3.1 Height.** Class III standpipe systems shall be installed throughout buildings where
2380 any of the following conditions exist:

2381

2382 1. Four or more stories are above or below grade plane.

2383

2384 2. The floor level of the highest *story* is located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) above the
2385 lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

2386

2387 3. The floor level of the lowest story is located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) below the
2388 highest level of fire department vehicle access.

2389

2390 **Exceptions:**

2391

2392 1. Class I standpipes are allowed in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic*
2393 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

2394

2395 2. Class I standpipes are allowed in Group B and E occupancies.

2396

2397 3. Class I manual standpipes are allowed in parking garages.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 2398
2399
2400
2401
2402
2403
2404
2405
2406
4. Class I standpipes are allowed in basements equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system*.
 5. Class I standpipes are allowed in buildings where occupant-use hose lines will not be utilized by trained personnel or the fire department.
 6. In determining the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, it shall not be required to consider either of the following:

2407
2408
2409
2410
2411

- 6.1 Recessed loading docks for four vehicles or less.

- 6.2 Conditions where topography makes access from the fire department vehicle to the building impractical or impossible.

2412
2413
2414

[F] 905.3.2 Group A. Class I automatic wet standpipes shall be provided in nonsprinklered Group A buildings having an *occupant load* exceeding 1,000 persons.

2415
2416

[Exceptions:

- 2417
2418
2419
2420
2421
1. ~~Open air seating spaces without enclosed spaces.~~
 2. ~~Class I automatic dry and semiautomatic dry standpipes or manual wet standpipes are allowed in buildings that are not high-rise buildings.]~~

2422
2423
2424
2425
2426
2427
2428
2429
2430
2431
2432

[F] 905.3.3 Covered and open mall buildings. Covered mall and open mall buildings shall be equipped throughout with a standpipe system where required by Section 905.3.1. Mall buildings not required to be equipped with a standpipe system by Section 905.3.1 shall be equipped with Class I hose connections connected to the *automatic sprinkler system* sized to deliver water at 250 gallons per minute (946.4 L/min) at the most hydraulically remote hose connection while concurrently supplying the automatic sprinkler system demand. The standpipe system shall be designed to not exceed a 50 pounds per square inch (psi) (345 kPa) residual pressure loss with a flow of 250 gallons per minute (946.4 L/min) from the fire department connection to the hydraulically most remote hose connection. Hose connections shall be provided at each of the following locations:

- 2433
2434
2435
2436
2437
2438
2439
2440
2441
2442
1. Within the mall at the entrance to each *exit* passageway or *corridor*.
 2. At each floor-level landing within *interior exit stairways* opening directly on the mall.
 3. At exterior public entrances to the mall of a covered mall building.
 4. At public entrances at the perimeter line of an open mall building.
 5. At other locations as necessary so that the distance to reach all portions of a tenant space does not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm) from a hose connection.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2443 [F] **905.3.4 Stages.** *Stages* greater than 1,000 square feet in area (93 m²) shall be equipped
2444 with a Class III wet standpipe system with 1½-inch and 2½ -inch (38 mm and 64 mm) hose
2445 connections on each side of the stage.

2446
2447 **Exception:** Where the building or area is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler*
2448 *system*, a 1½-inch (38 mm) hose connection shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 13
2449 or in accordance with NFPA 14 for Class II or III standpipes.

2450
2451 [F] **905.3.4.1 Hose and cabinet.** The 1½-inch (38 mm) hose connections shall be equipped
2452 with sufficient lengths of 1½-inch (38 mm) hose to provide fire protection for the stage
2453 area. Hose connections shall be equipped with an *approved* adjustable fog nozzle and be
2454 mounted in a cabinet or on a rack.

2455
2456 [F] **905.3.5 Underground buildings.** Underground buildings shall be equipped throughout
2457 with a Class I automatic wet or manual wet standpipe system.

2458
2459 [F] **905.3.6 Helistops and heliports.** Buildings with a rooftop *helistop* or *heliport* shall be
2460 equipped with a Class I or III standpipe system extended to the roof level on which the *helistop*
2461 or *heliport* is located in accordance with Section 2007.5 of the *Dallas [International] Fire*
2462 *Code*.

2463
2464 [F] **905.3.7 Marinas and boatyards.** Standpipes in marinas and boatyards shall comply with
2465 Chapter 36 of the *Dallas [International] Fire Code*.

2466
2467 [F] **905.3.8 Landscaped roofs.** Buildings or structures that have landscaped roofs and that are
2468 equipped with a standpipe system shall have the standpipe system extended to the roof level
2469 on which the rooftop garden or landscaped roof is located.

2470
2471 **905.3.9 Buildings exceeding 10,000 square feet.** In buildings exceeding 10,000 square feet
2472 (929.03 m²) per story, Class I automatic wet or manual wet standpipes must be provided where
2473 any portion of the building's interior area is more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) of travel,
2474 vertically and horizontally, from the nearest point of fire department vehicle access.
2475

2476 **Exceptions:**

2477
2478 1. Automatic dry and semi-automatic dry standpipes are allowed as provided for in
2479 NFPA 14 where approved by Fire Code Official.

2480
2481 2. R-2 occupancies of four stories or less in height having no interior corridors.”
2482

2483 **New COG Amendment added per Fire Code**

2484 **905.3.10 Buildings exceeding 500,000 square feet.** In buildings exceeding 500,000 square
2485 feet (46,451.52 m²) see Fire Fighter Air Replenishment Systems Section L101.1 of the Dallas
2486 Fire Code.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2487 **Carryover COG Amendment**

2488 **60. Subsection [F] 905.4, “Location of Class I Standpipe Hose Connections,” of**

2489 **Section 905, “Standpipe Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021**

2490 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

2491 **“[F] 905.4 Location of Class I standpipe hose connections.** Class I standpipe hose connections
2492 shall be provided in all of the following locations:

2493
2494 1. In every required [*interior*] *exit stairway*, a hose connection shall be provided for each story
2495 above or below grade plane. Hose connections shall be located at the main floor landing
2496 unless otherwise *approved* by the fire code official.

2497
2498 **Exception:** A single hose connection shall be permitted to be installed in the open corridor
2499 or open breezeway between open stairs that are not greater than 75 feet (22 860 mm) apart.

2500
2501 2. On each side of the wall adjacent to the *exit* opening of a *horizontal exit*.

2502
2503 **Exception:** Where floor areas adjacent to a *horizontal exit* are reachable from an [*interior*]
2504 *exit stairway* hose connection by a 30-foot (9144 mm) hose stream from a nozzle attached
2505 to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose, a hose connection shall not be required at the *horizontal*
2506 *exit*.

2507
2508 3. In every *exit* passageway, at the entrance from the *exit* passageway to other areas of a
2509 building.

2510
2511 **Exception:** Where floor areas adjacent to an *exit* passageway are reachable from an
2512 [*interior*] *exit stairway* hose connection by a 30-foot (9144 mm) hose stream from a nozzle
2513 attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose, a hose connection shall not be required at the
2514 entrance from the *exit* passageway to other areas of the building.

2515
2516 4. In covered mall buildings, adjacent to each exterior public entrance to the mall and adjacent
2517 to each entrance from an exit passageway or exit corridor to the mall. In open mall
2518 buildings, adjacent to each public entrance to the mall at the perimeter line and adjacent to
2519 each entrance from an exit passageway or exit corridor to the mall.

2520
2521 5. Where the roof has a slope less than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33.3-percent
2522 slope), each standpipe shall be provided with a two-way [a] hose connection [~~shall be~~]
2523 located to serve the roof or at the highest landing of an [*interior*] *exit stairway* with access
2524 to the roof provided in accordance with Section 1011.12.

2525
2526 6. Where the most remote portion of a nonsprinklered floor or *story* is more than 150 feet (45
2527 720 mm) from a hose connection or the most remote portion of a sprinklered floor or *story*

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

is more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) from a hose connection, the fire code official is authorized to require that additional hose connections be provided in *approved* locations.

7. When required by this chapter, standpipe connections shall be placed adjacent to all required exits to the structure and at 200 foot intervals along major corridors thereafter, or as otherwise approved by the fire code official.

[F] 905.4.1 Protection. Risers and laterals of Class I standpipe systems not located within an *interior exit stairway* shall be protected by a degree of *fire resistance* equal to that required for vertical enclosures in the building in which they are located.

Exception: In buildings equipped throughout with an *approved automatic sprinkler system*, laterals that are not located within an *interior exit stairway* are not required to be enclosed within fire-resistance-rated construction.

[F] 905.4.2 Interconnection. In buildings where more than one standpipe is provided, the standpipes shall be interconnected in accordance with NFPA 14.

Carryover COG Amendment

905.4.3 Additional requirements. All Class I standpipes must be:

1. Filled with water at all times; or
2. Supervised with a minimum of 10 psig (69 kPa) air pressure with a high/low alarm.”

New COG Amendment

61. Subsection [F] 905.8, “Dry standpipes,” of Section 905, “Standpipe systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

“905.8 Dry standpipes. Dry standpipes shall not be installed.

Exception: Where subject to freezing and in accordance with NFPA 14. Additionally, manual dry standpipe systems shall be supervised with a minimum of 10 psig and maximum of 40 psig air pressure with a high/low supervisory alarm.

New COG Amendment

62. Subsection [F] 905.9, “Valve supervision,” of Section 905, “Standpipe systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2567 **“905.9 Valve supervision.** Valves controlling water supplies shall be supervised in the
2568 open position so that a change in normal position of the valve will generate a supervisory
2569 signal at supervising station required by Section 903.4. Where a fire alarm system is
2570 provided, a signal shall be transmitted to the control unit.

2571 **Exceptions:**

- 2572 1. Valves to underground key or hub valves in roadway boxes do not require
2573 supervision.
- 2574 2. Valves locked in the normal position and inspected as provided in this code in
2575 buildings not equipped with a fire alarm system.
2576

2577
2578 Sprinkler and standpipe system water-flow detectors shall be provided for each floor tap to
2579 the sprinkler system and shall cause an alarm upon detection of water flow for more than
2580 45 seconds. All control valves in the sprinkler and standpipe systems except for fire
2581 department hose connection valves shall be electrically supervised to initiate a supervisory
2582 signal at the central station upon tampering.

2583 **Carryover COG amendment – IFC/DFC**

2584 **63. Section 905, “Standpipe Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of**
2585 **the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subsection 905.12,**
2586 **“Standpipe Testing,” to read as follows:**

2587 **“905.12 Standpipe testing.** Building owners/managers shall use a licensed fire protection contractor
2588 to test and certify standpipe systems. In addition to the standpipe systems testing and maintenance
2589 requirements of NFPA 25, the following additional requirements shall be applied to the testing that is
2590 required every 5 years:

- 2591 1. The piping between the fire department connection (FDC) and the standpipe shall be
2592 hydrostatically tested for all FDCs on any type of standpipe system. Hydrostatic testing shall
2593 also be conducted in accordance with NFPA 25 requirements for the different types of
2594 standpipe systems.
2595
- 2596 2. For any manual (dry or wet) standpipe system not having an automatic water supply capable
2597 of flowing water through the standpipe, the contractor shall connect a hose from a fire hydrant
2598 or portable pumping system (as approved by the fire code official) to each FDC, and flow
2599 water (at an approved rate and pressure) through the standpipe system to the roof outlet to
2600 verify that each inlet connection functions properly. Verify that check valves function properly
2601 and that there are no closed control valves on the system.
2602
- 2603 3. Any pressure relief, reducing, or control valves shall be tested in accordance with the
2604 requirements of NFPA 25.
2605

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 2606 4. If the FDC is not already provided with approved caps, the contractor shall install such
2607 caps for all FDCs.
2608
- 2609 5. Upon successful completion of standpipe test, the contractor shall place an appropriate
2610 service tag as per the State of Texas provisions.
2611
- 2612 6. The contractor shall follow the procedures required by the State of Texas with regard to
2613 appropriate tags denoting noncompliance, impairment or any deficiencies noted during the
2614 testing, including the required notification of the local authority having jurisdiction.
2615
- 2616 7. Additionally, records of the testing shall be maintained by the owner and contractor, as
2617 required by the State of Texas and NFPA 25.
2618
- 2619 8. Standpipe system tests where water will be flowed external to the building shall not be
2620 conducted during freezing conditions or during the day prior to expected night time
2621 freezing conditions.
2622
- 2623 9. Contact the fire code official for requests to remove existing fire hose from Class II and III
2624 standpipe systems where employees are not trained in the utilization of this firefighting
2625 equipment. All standpipe hose valves must remain in place and be provided with an
2626 approved cap and chain when approval is given to remove hose by the fire code official.”
2627
2628
2629
2630

New COG amendment – IFC/DFC

2631 **64. Subsection [F] 906.1, “Where required,” of Section 906, “Portable Fire**
2632 **Extinguishers,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building**
2633 **Code is amended to read as follows:**
2634

2635 “[F] 906.1 Where required. Portable fire extinguishers shall be installed in all of the following
2636 locations:

- 2637
- 2638 1. In Group A, B, E, F, H, I, M, R-1, R-2, R-4 and S occupancies.
2639

Exceptions:

- 2640
- 2641 1. In Group R-2 occupancies, portable fire extinguishers shall be required only in
2642 locations specified in Item 2 through 6 where each dwelling unit is provided
2643 with a portable fire extinguisher having a minimum rating of 1-A:10-B:C.
2644

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 2645 2. In Group E occupancies, portable fire extinguishers shall be required only in
2646 locations specified in Items 2 through 6 where each classroom is provided with
2647 a portable fire extinguisher having a minimum rating of 2-A:20-B:C.
2648 3. ~~In storage areas of Group S Occupancies where forklift, powered industrial
2649 truck or powered cart operators are the primary occupants, fixed extinguishers,
2650 as specified in NFPA 10, shall not be required where in accordance with all of
2651 the following:~~
2652 ~~3.1 Use of vehicle-mounted extinguishers shall be approved by the fire code
2653 official.~~
2654 ~~3.2 Each vehicle shall be equipped with a 10-pound, 20A:80-B:C
2655 extinguisher affixed to the vehicle using a mounting bracket approved
2656 by the extinguisher manufacturer or the fire code official for vehicular
2657 use.~~
2658 ~~3.3 Not less than two spare extinguishers of equal or greater rating shall be
2659 available on site to replace a discharged extinguisher.~~
2660 ~~3.4 Vehicle operators shall be trained in the proper operation, use and
2661 inspection of extinguishers.~~
2662 ~~3.5 Inspections of vehicle-mounted extinguishers shall be performed daily.~~
2663
2664 2. Within 30 feet (9144 mm) distance of travel from commercial cooking equipment and
2665 from domestic cooking equipment in Group I-1; I-2, Condition 1; and R-2 college
2666 dormitory occupancies.
2667 3. In areas where flammable or *combustible liquids* are stored, used, or dispensed.
2668 4. On each floor of structures under construction, except Group R-3 occupancies, in
2669 accordance with Section 3315.1 of the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code*.
2670 5. Where required by the Dallas [~~International~~] *Fire Code* section indicated in Table
2671 906.1.
2672 6. Special-hazard areas, including but not limited to laboratories, computer rooms and
2673 generator rooms, where required by the fire code official.
2674

2675 **Exception:** Portable fire extinguishers are not required at normally unmanned Group U
2676 occupancy buildings or structures where a portable fire extinguisher suitable to the hazard
2677 of the location is provided on the vehicle of visiting personnel.

2678 Carryover COG amendment – IFC/DFC

2679 **65. Subsection [F] 907.1, “General,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection**
2680 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2681 **is amended to read as follows:**

2682 “[F] 907.1 **General.** This section covers the application, installation, performance and
2683 maintenance of fire alarm systems and their components. Provisions of the Dallas Fire Code
2684 govern in the event of conflicts between this section and the corresponding section of the Dallas

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2685 Fire Code.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2686 [F] **907.1.1 Construction documents.** *Construction documents* for fire alarm systems shall
2687 be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and
2688 show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this code, the Dallas [International]
2689 Fire Code, and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the fire code
2690 official.

2691
2692 [F] **907.1.2 Fire alarm shop drawings.** Shop drawings for fire alarm systems shall be in
2693 accordance with NFPA 72 and submitted for review and approval prior to system installation.
2694

2695 [F] **907.1.3 Equipment.** Systems and components shall be *listed* and *approved* for the purpose
2696 for which they are installed. Where such systems are installed, they must be designed, installed
2697 and maintained in accordance with this code and the applicable NFPA standards.
2698

2699 **907.1.3.1 Prohibited equipment.** Smoke generating devices activated by a burglar alarm,
2700 motion detector, tamper alarm or other type of intruder alarms are prohibited in all
2701 buildings.
2702

2703 **907.1.4 Design standards.** All new or replaced fire alarm systems (including fire alarm control
2704 panel replacements) must comply with the requirements of Section 907 and shall be
2705 addressable and in accordance with Section 907.6.3. Alarm systems utilizing more than 20
2706 alarm initiating devices shall be analog addressable.
2707

2708 **Exception:** Existing systems need not comply unless the total building or fire alarm system
2709 remodel or expansion initiated after the effective date of this code, as adopted, exceeds 30
2710 percent of the building area. When cumulative building remodel or expansion exceeds 50
2711 percent of the building area, all existing systems shall comply within 18 months of permit
2712 application. The owner or operator of the facility shall maintain documentation of the
2713 amount of fire alarm system remodel or expansion. The documentation must be submitted
2714 with each fire alarm system plan submittal or upon request from the fire code official.
2715

2716 **907.1.5 Area separation walls/fire walls.** Area separation walls/fire walls must not be used
2717 to reduce or eliminate fire alarm requirements.
2718

2719 **Exception:** Adjacent spaces are considered separate areas for fire alarm purposes if
2720 separated by minimum fire-rated construction as required in this code to define separate
2721 buildings. Separating walls cannot have openings that permit occupant communication
2722 between the spaces.”
2723

2724 Carryover DFC Amendment

2725 **66. Paragraph [F] 907.2.1, “Group A,” of Subsection [F] 907.2, “Where**
2726 **Required—New Buildings and Structures,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2727 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2728 **is amended to read as follows:**

2729 **“[F] 907.2.1 Group A.** A manual fire alarm system and automatic fire detection in paths of
2730 egress that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall
2731 be installed in Group A occupancies [~~where the~~] having an occupant load [~~due to the assembly~~
2732 ~~occupancy is~~] of 300 or more persons, or where the [~~Group A~~] occupant load is more than 100
2733 persons above or below the *lowest level of exit discharge*. Group A occupancies not separated
2734 from one another in accordance with Section 707.3.10 shall be considered as a single
2735 occupancy for the purposes of applying this section. Portions of Group E occupancies occupied
2736 for assembly purposes shall be provided with a fire alarm system as required for the Group E
2737 occupancy.

2738
2739
2740

Activation of fire alarm notification appliances must:

- 2741 1. Cause illumination of the *means of egress* with light of not less than 1 foot candle
2742 (11 lux) at the walking surface level, and
- 2743 2. Stop any conflicting or confusing sounds and visual distractions.
2744

2745 **Exception:** Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped
2746 throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section
2747 903.3.1.1, and automatic fire detection in paths of egress, and the occupant notification
2748 appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

2749
2750
2751
2752
2753
2754

**[F] 907.2.1.1 System initiation in Group A occupancies with an occupant load of 1,000
or more.** Activation of the fire alarm in Group A occupancies with an *occupant load* of
1,000 or more shall initiate a signal using an emergency voice/alarm communications
system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

2755
2756
2757
2758

Exception: Where *approved*, the prerecorded announcement is allowed to be manually
deactivated for a period of time, not to exceed 3 minutes, for the sole purpose of
allowing a live voice announcement from an *approved, constantly attended location*.

2759 **[F] 907.2.1.2 Emergency voice/alarm communication captions.** Stadiums, arenas and
2760 grandstands required to caption audible public announcements shall be in accordance with
2761 Section 907.5.2.2.4.”

2762
2763
2764

Carryover DFC Amendment

2765 **67. Paragraph [F] 907.2.2, “Group B,” of Subsection [F] 907.2, “Where
Required—New Buildings and Structures,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2766 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2767 **is amended to read as follows:**

2768 “[F] 907.2.2 Group B. A manual fire alarm system, which activates the occupant notification
2769 system in accordance with Section 907.5, and automatic fire detection in paths of egress shall
2770 be installed in Group B occupancies where one of the following conditions exists:

- 2771
- 2772 1. The combined Group B *occupant load* of all floors is 500 or more.
 - 2773 2. The Group B *occupant load* is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest *level*
2774 *of exit discharge*.
 - 2775 3. The *fire area* contains an *ambulatory care facility*.

2776
2777 **Exception:** Manual fire alarm boxes and automatic fire detection in paths of egress are
2778 not required where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system*
2779 installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will
2780 activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

2781
2782 [F] 907.2.2.1 **Ambulatory care facilities.** *Fire areas* containing *ambulatory care facilities*
2783 shall be provided with an electronically supervised automatic smoke detection system
2784 installed within the *ambulatory care facility* and in *public use areas* outside of tenant
2785 spaces, including public *corridors* and elevator lobbies.

2786
2787 ~~[Exception: Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in
2788 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, provided the occupant notification appliances will
2789 activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.]”~~

2791 **Carryover DFC Amendment**

2792 **68. Paragraph [F] 907.2.3, “Group E,” of Subsection [F] 907.2, “Where**
2793 **Required—New Buildings and Structures,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection**
2794 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2795 **is amended to read as follows:**

2796 “[F] 907.2.3 Group E. A manual fire alarm system and automatic fire detection in paths of
2797 egress that initiates the occupant notification signal utilizing an emergency voice/alarm
2798 communication system meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in
2799 accordance with Section 907.6 shall be installed in Group E educational occupancies. Group
2800 E day care occupancies shall have a smoke detector in all areas used by children. Where
2801 *automatic sprinkler systems* or smoke detectors are installed, such systems or detectors shall
2802 be connected to the building fire alarm system. Unless separated by a minimum of 100 feet
2803 (30 480 mm) of open space, all buildings, whether portable buildings or the main building, will
2804 be considered one building for fire alarm *occupant load* consideration and interconnection of

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2805

alarm systems.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2806
2807
2808
2809
2810
2811
2812
2813
2814
2815
2816
2817
2818
2819
2820
2821
2822
2823
2824
2825
2826
2827
2828
2829
2830
2831
2832
2833
2834
2835
2836
2837
2838
2839
2840
2841
2842
2843
2844
2845
2846
2847
2848
2849
2850
2851
2852

Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system with automatic fire detection in paths of egress shall not be required in Group E educational and day care occupancies with an *occupant load* of 30 [~~50~~] or less when provided with an approved *automatic sprinkler system*.
 - 1.1 Residential in-home day care with not more than 12 children may use interconnected single station detectors in all habitable rooms. (For care of more than five children 2½ years of age or younger, see Section 907.2.6)
2. Emergency voice/alarm communication systems meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6 shall not be required in Group E occupancies with occupant loads of 100 or less, provided that activation of the manual fire alarm system initiates an *approved* occupant notification signal in accordance with Section 907.5.
3. [~~Manual fire alarm boxes shall not be required in Group E occupancies where all of the following apply:~~
 - 3.1 ~~Interior corridors are protected by smoke detectors.~~
 - 3.2 ~~Auditoriums, cafeterias, gymnasiums and similar areas are protected by heat detectors or other approved detection devices.~~
 - 3.3 ~~Shops and laboratories involving dusts or vapors are protected by heat detectors or other approved detection devices.]~~
 - 3.4 ~~Manual activation is provided from normally occupied location~~
3. [~~4.~~] Manual fire alarm boxes and fire detection in paths of egress shall not be required in Group E educational occupancies where all of the following apply:
 - 3.1[~~4.1~~]. The building is equipped throughout with an *approved automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
 - 3.2 [~~4.2~~]. The emergency voice/alarm communication system will activate on sprinkler waterflow.
 - 3.3[~~4.3~~]. Manual activation is provided from a normally occupied location.

907.2.3.1 Exterior alarm-signaling device. Alarm-sharing devices must be mounted on the exterior of the building in all common use/gathering areas.”

Carryover DFC Amendment

69. Paragraph [F] 907.2.6, “Group I,” of Subsection [F] 907.2, “Where Required—New Buildings and Structures,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2857 is amended by adding a **new** Subparagraph 907.2.6.4, “Institutional Group I-4 Day Care
2858 Facilities,” to read as follows:

2859 “**907.2.6.4 Group I-4 day care facilities.** A manual fire alarm system and automatic fire
2860 detection in paths of egress that activates the occupant notification system in accordance
2861 with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group I-4 day care facility occupancies. Group I-
2862 4 day care facility occupancies shall have smoke detectors in all areas used by children.
2863 When *automatic sprinkler systems* or smoke detectors are installed, such systems or
2864 detectors shall be connected to the building fire alarm system.”

2865 **Carryover DFC Amendment**

2866 **70. Paragraph [F] 907.2.7, “Group M,” of Subsection [F] 907.2, “Where**
2867 **Required—New Buildings and Structures,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection**
2868 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
2869 **is amended to read as follows:**

2871 “[F] **907.2.7 Group M.** A manual fire alarm system and an automatic fire protection system
2872 in paths of ingress that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section
2873 907.5 shall be installed in Group M occupancies where one of the following conditions exists:

- 2874
- 2875 1. The combined Group M *occupant load* of all floors is 500 or more persons.
 - 2876 2. The Group M *occupant load* is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest *level*
2877 *of exit discharge*.

2878 **Exceptions:**

- 2880 1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in *covered or open mall buildings*
2881 *complying with Section 402*.
- 2882 2. Manual fire alarm boxes and an automatic fire detection system in paths of egress
2883 *are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic*
2884 *sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant
2885 notification appliances will automatically activate throughout the notification zones
2886 upon sprinkler waterflow.

2887

2888 [F] **907.2.7.1 Occupant notification.** During times that the building is occupied, the
2889 initiation of a signal from a manual fire alarm box, [Ø] from a waterflow switch or
2890 automatic fire detection system shall not be required to activate the alarm notification
2891 appliances when an alarm signal is activated at a *constantly attended location* from which
2892 evacuation instructions shall be initiated over an emergency voice/alarm communication
2893 system installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.”

2894 **New COG/DFC Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2896 71. Paragraph [F] 907.2.10, “Group S,” of Subsection [F] 907.2, “Where
2897 **Required—New Buildings and Structures,”** of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection
2898 **Systems,”** of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code
2899 **is amended to read as follows:**

2900 “[F] 907.2.7 **Group S.** A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system
2901 in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group S public- and self-storage occupancies
2902 ~~three stories or greater in height~~ for interior corridors and interior common areas. Visible
2903 notification appliances are not required within storage units.

2904
2905 **Exception:** Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped
2906 throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section
2907 903.3.1.1, and the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification
2908 zones upon sprinkler water flow.

2909 **Carryover COG/DFC Amendment**

2910 72. Paragraph [F] 907.2.13, “High-Rise Buildings,” of Subsection [F] 907.2,
2911
2912 “Where Required—New Buildings and Structures,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and
2913 **Detection Systems,”** of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International
2914 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

2915 “[F] 907.2.13 **High-rise buildings.** ~~[High-rise]~~ B[b]uildings with a floor used for human
2916 occupancy located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department
2917 vehicle access shall be provided with an automatic smoke detection/fire alarm system in
2918 accordance with Section 907.2.13.1, a fire department communication system in accordance
2919 with Section 907.2.13.2 and an emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance
2920 with Section 907.5.2.2.

2921 **Exceptions:**

- 2922 1. Airport traffic control towers in accordance with Sections 412 and 907.2.22.
- 2923 2. *Open parking garages* in accordance with Section 406.5.
- 2924 3. Open air portions of b[B]uildings with an occupancy in Group A-5 in accordance
2925 with Section 303.6, however this exception does not apply to enclosed concourses
2926 or accessory use areas including, but not limited to, skyboxes, restaurants and
2927 similarly enclosed areas [303.1].
- 2928 4. Low-hazard special occupancies in accordance with Section 503.1.1.
- 2929 5. Buildings with an occupancy in Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 in accordance with Section
2930 415.
- 2931

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 2932 6. In Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies, the alarm shall sound at a *constantly attended*
2933 *location* and occupant notification shall be broadcast by the emergency voice/alarm
2934 communication system.
2935

2936 [F] **907.2.13.1 Automatic smoke detection.** Automatic smoke detection in high-rise
2937 buildings shall be in accordance with Sections 907.2.12.1.1 and 907.2.12.1.2.
2938

2939 [F] **907.2.13.1.1 Area smoke detection.** Area smoke detectors shall be provided in
2940 accordance with this section. Smoke detectors shall be connected to an automatic fire
2941 alarm system. The activation of any detector required by this section shall activate the
2942 emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.
2943 In addition to smoke detectors required by Sections 907.2.1 through 907.2.9, smoke
2944 detectors shall be located as follows:
2945

- 2946 1. In each mechanical equipment, electrical transformer, telephone equipment or
2947 similar room which is not provided with sprinkler protection.
- 2948 2. In each elevator machine room, machinery room, control room and control
2949 space and in elevator lobbies.
- 2950 3. In all interior corridors serving as a means of egress for an occupant load of 10
2951 or more in Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies.
2952

2953 [M] **907.2.13.1.2 Duct smoke detection.** Duct smoke detectors complying with
2954 Section 907.3.1 shall be located ~~as follows:~~
2955

- 2956 ~~4.] i[~~f~~]n the main return air and exhaust air plenum of each air-conditioning system~~
2957 ~~having a capacity greater than 2,000 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.94 m³/s).~~
2958 ~~Such detectors shall be located in a serviceable area downstream of the last duct~~
2959 ~~inlet and per NFPA 72. The actuation of any such detector must shut down the~~
2960 ~~affected air-handling units or operate dampers to prevent the recirculation of~~
2961 ~~smoke. Controls allowing the manual restarting of air-handling equipment~~
2962 ~~during an alarm condition must be provided.~~

- 2963 ~~[2. At each connection to a vertical duct or riser serving two or more stories from~~
2964 ~~a return air duct or plenum of an air-conditioning system. In Group R-1 and R-~~
2965 ~~2 occupancies, a smoke detector is allowed to be used in each return air riser~~
2966 ~~carrying not more than 5,000 cfm (2.4 m³/s) and serving not more than 10 air-~~
2967 ~~inlet openings.]~~
2968

2969 [F] **907.2.13.2 Fire department communication system.** Where a wired communication
2970 system is *approved in lieu of an in-building two-way* emergency responder radio coverage
2971 system in accordance with Section 510 of the *Dallas [International] Fire Code*, the wired
2972 fire department communication system shall be designed and installed in accordance with
2973 NFPA 72 and shall operate between a fire command center complying with Section 911,
2974 elevators, elevator lobbies, emergency and standby power rooms, fire pump rooms, *areas*
2975 *of refuge* and inside *interior exit stairways*. The fire department communication device
2976 shall be provided at each floor level within the *interior exit stairway*. The wired

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

2977 communication system and required appurtenances shall be maintained in an operable
2978 condition at all times.”
2979

2980 **Carryover COG/DFC Amendment**

2981 **73. Paragraph [F] 907.4.2, “Manual Fire Alarm Boxes,” of Subsection [F] 907.4,**
2982 **“Initiating Devices,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire**
2983 **Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

2984 **“[F] 907.4.2 Manual fire alarm boxes.** Where a manual fire alarm system is required by
2985 another section of this code, it shall be activated by alarm boxes installed in accordance with
2986 Sections 907.4.2.1 through 907.4.2.6. Manual fire alarm actuating devices must be an
2987 approved double action type.
2988

2989 **[F] 907.4.2.1 Location.** Manual fire alarm boxes shall be located not more than 5 feet
2990 (1524 mm) from the entrance to each *exit*. In buildings not protected by an *automatic*
2991 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, additional manual fire
2992 alarm boxes shall be located so that the distance of travel to the nearest box does not exceed
2993 200 feet (60 960 mm).
2994

2995 **[F] 907.4.2.2 Height.** The height of the manual fire alarm boxes shall be not less than 42
2996 inches (1067 mm) and not more than 48 inches (1372 mm) measured vertically, from the
2997 floor level to the activating handle or lever of the box.
2998

2999 **[F] 907.4.2.3 Color.** Manual fire alarm boxes shall be red in color.
3000

3001 **Exception:** Other colors may be acceptable if red does not provide a contrast with the
3002 surrounding background, when approved by the fire code official.
3003

3004 **[F] 907.4.2.4 Signs.** Where approved existing fire alarm systems are not monitored by an
3005 *approved* supervising station in accordance with Section 907.6.6, an *approved* permanent
3006 sign shall be installed adjacent to each manual fire alarm box that reads: WHEN ALARM
3007 SOUNDS CALL FIRE DEPARTMENT.
3008

3009 **Exception:** Where the manufacturer has permanently provided this information on the
3010 manual fire alarm box.
3011

3012 **[F] 907.4.2.5 Protective covers.** The fire code official is authorized to require the
3013 installation of *listed* manual fire alarm box protective covers to prevent malicious false
3014 alarms or to provide the manual fire alarm box with protection from physical damage. The
3015 protective cover shall be transparent or red in color with a transparent face to permit
3016 visibility of the manual fire alarm box. Each cover shall include proper operating
3017 instructions. A protective cover that emits a local alarm signal shall not be installed unless

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3018 *approved by the fire code official.* Protective covers shall not project more than that
3019 permitted by Section 1003.3.3.

3020
3021 [F] 907.4.2.6 Unobstructed and unobscured. Manual fire alarm boxes shall be
3022 accessible, unobstructed, unobscured and visible at all times.”

3023
3024 **Carryover COG/DFC Amendment**

3025 **74. Subparagraph [F] 907.5.2.2, “Emergency Voice/Alarm Communication**
3026 **Systems,” of Paragraph [F] 907.5.2, “Alarm Notification Appliances,” of Subsection [F]**
3027 **907.5, “Occupant Notification Systems,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection**
3028 **Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
3029 **is amended to read as follows:**

3030 “[F] 907.5.2.2 **Emergency voice/alarm communication systems.** Emergency voice/alarm
3031 communication systems required by this code shall be designed and installed in accordance
3032 with NFPA 72. The operation of any automatic fire detector, sprinkler waterflow device or
3033 manual fire alarm box shall automatically sound an alert tone followed by voice instructions
3034 giving *approved* information and directions for a general or staged evacuation in
3035 accordance with the building’s fire safety and evacuation plans required by Section 404 of
3036 the *Dallas [International] Fire Code*. In high-rise buildings, the system shall operate on at
3037 least the alarming floor, the floor above and the floor below and identify on an annunciator
3038 the zone or address from which the alarm signal originated. Speakers shall be provided
3039 throughout the building by paging zones. At a minimum, paging zones shall be provided
3040 as follows:

- 3041
- 3042 1. Elevator groups.
 - 3043 2. *Interior exit stairways*.
 - 3044 3. Each floor.
 - 3045 4. *Areas of refuge* as defined in Chapter 2.
- 3046

3047 **Exception:** In Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies, the alarm shall sound in a constantly
3048 attended area and a general occupant notification shall be broadcast over the overhead
3049 page.

3050
3051 [F] 907.5.2.2.1 **Manual override.** A manual override for emergency voice
3052 communication shall be provided on a selective and all-call basis for all paging zones.

3053
3054 [F] 907.5.2.2.2 **Live voice messages.** The emergency voice/alarm communication
3055 system shall have the capability to broadcast live voice messages by paging zones on a
3056 selective and all-call basis.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3057 [F] 907.5.2.2.3 **Alternate uses.** The emergency voice/alarm communication system
3058 shall be allowed to be used for other announcements, provided the manual fire alarm
3059 use takes precedence over any other use.

3060
3061 [F] 907.5.2.2.4 **Emergency voice/alarm communication captions.** Where stadiums,
3062 arenas and grandstands have 15,000 fixed seats or more and provide audible public
3063 announcements, the emergency/voice alarm communication system shall provide
3064 prerecorded or real-time captions. Prerecorded or live emergency captions shall be
3065 from an *approved* location constantly attended by personnel trained to respond to an
3066 emergency.

3067
3068 [F] 907.5.2.2.5 **Standby power.** Emergency voice/alarm communications systems
3069 shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 2702.

3070
3071 **Carryover DFC Amendment**
3072 **75. Subparagraph [F] 907.5.2.3, “Visible Alarms,” of Paragraph [F] 907.5.2,**
3073 **“Alarm Notification Appliances,” of Subsection [F] 907.5, “Occupant Notification Systems,”**
3074 **of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection**
3075 **Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

3076 “[F] 907.5.2.3 **Visible alarms.** Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in
3077 accordance with Sections 907.5.2.3.1 through 907.5.2.3.3. Visual alarm notification
3078 appliances must be provided where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded, altered or a
3079 new fire alarm system is installed.
3080

3081 **Exceptions:**

- 3082
- 3083 1. Visible alarm notification appliances are not required in storage areas of Group
3084 S occupancies [~~alterations, except where an existing fire alarm system is~~
3085 ~~upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed~~].
 - 3086 2. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in *exits* as defined in
3087 Chapter 2.
 - 3088 3. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in elevator cars.
 - 3089 4. Visual alarm notification appliances are not required in critical care areas of
3090 Group I-2 Condition 2 occupancies that are in compliance with Section 907.2.6,
3091 Exception 2.
 - 3092 5. A visible *alarm notification appliance* installed in a nurses’ control station or
3093 other continuously attended staff location in a Group I-2, Condition 2 suite shall
3094 be an acceptable alternative to the installation of visible alarm notification
3095 appliances throughout the suite or unit in Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancies
3096 that are in compliance with Section 907.2.6, Exception 2.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3097 [F] 907.5.2.3.1 **Public use areas and common use areas.** Visible alarm notification
3098 appliances shall be provided in *public use areas* and *common use areas*.
3099

3100 **Exception:** Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the
3101 notification appliance circuits serving the employee work areas shall be initially
3102 designed with not less than 20-percent spare capacity to account for the potential
3103 of adding visible notification appliances in the future to accommodate hearing-
3104 impaired employee(s).
3105

3106 [F] 907.5.2.3.2 **Groups I-1 and R-1.** Habitable spaces in *dwelling units* or *sleeping*
3107 *units* in Group I-1 and R-1 occupancies in accordance with Table 907.5.2.3.2 shall be
3108 provided with visible alarm notification. Visible alarms shall be activated by the in-
3109 room smoke alarm and the building fire alarm system.
3110

3111 [F] 907.5.2.3.3 **Group R-2.** In Group R-2 occupancies required by Section 907 to have
3112 a fire alarm system, each *story* that contains *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* shall be
3113 provided with the capability to support visible alarm notification appliances in
3114 accordance with Chapter 11 of ICC A117.1. Such capability shall accommodate wired
3115 or wireless equipment.

3116 [F] 907.5.2.3.2.1 **Wired equipment.** Where wired equipment is used to comply
3117 with the future capability required by Section 907.5.2.3.3, the system shall include one
3118 of the following capabilities:
3119

- 3120 1. The replacement of audible appliances with combination audible/visible
3121 appliances or additional visible notification appliances.
- 3122 2. The future extension of the existing wiring from the unit smoke alarm locations
3123 to required locations for visible appliances.
- 3124 3. For wired equipment, the fire alarm power supply and circuits shall have not
3125 less than 5-percent excess capacity to accommodate the future addition of
3126 visible alarm notification appliances, and a single access point to such circuits
3127 shall be available on every story. Such circuits shall not be required to be
3128 extended beyond a single access point on a story. The fire alarm system shop
3129 drawings required by Section 907.1.2 shall include the power supply and circuit
3130 documentation to accommodate the future addition of visible notification
3131 appliances.
3132

3133 **907.5.2.3.4 Notification alarm continuation.** Fire alarm systems shall be programmed
3134 non-silence-able for all extinguishing and suppression systems. Visible notification
3135 appliances shall continue to operate until the fire alarm system has been cleared and
3136 reset.
3137

3138 **Carryover DFC Amendment**

3139 **76. Paragraph [F] 907.6.1, “Wiring,” of Subsection [F] 907.6, “Installation and**

3140 **Monitoring,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire**

3141 Amend Chapter 53 (adopt 2021 International Building Code) – Page 86 Updated September 28, 2022

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3142 **Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by to read as**
3143 **follows:**

3144 “[F] **907.6.1 Wiring.** Wiring shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 72.
3145 Wireless protection systems utilizing radio-frequency transmitting devices shall comply with
3146 the special requirements for supervision of low-power wireless systems in NFPA 72.

3147 **907.6.1.1 Installation.** All fire alarm systems must be installed in such a manner that the
3148 failure of any single alarm initiating device or a single open in an initiating circuit
3149 conductor will not interfere with the normal operation of other such devices. All initiating
3150 circuit conductors must be Class “A” or Class “X” wired with a minimum of 6 feet of
3151 horizontal and vertical separation between supply and return circuit conductors. All fire
3152 alarm systems must be wired as follows: IDC – Class A style or Class “X” style – D; SLC
3153 – Class A or Class “X” style 6; NAC Class B.
3154

3155 **Exception:** The IDC from an addressable device used to monitor the status of a
3156 suppression system and duct detectors may be wired Class B, Style B provided the
3157 addressable device is located within 10 feet of the suppression system device.
3158

3159 **907.6.1.2 Support.** Fire alarm system wiring and cables shall be independently
3160 supported using guide wires and anchors that are attached to the building structure.

3161 **Exception:** Independent support wires may be attached to the ceiling grid for
3162 stabilization only.
3163
3164

3165 **907.6.1.3 Identification.** All fire alarm system guide wire shall be painted
3166 red or labeled “Fire Alarm Only.” All fire alarm wiring junction boxes shall
3167 be labeled “Fire Alarm Use.” All fire alarm circuits shall be identified at terminal and
3168 junction boxes.
3169

3170 **907.6.1.4 Inspection.** All fire alarm system wiring installations shall be inspected by
3171 the fire code official for compliance with the requirements of this code, NFPA 70 and
3172 NFPA 72.
3173

3174 **907.6.1.5 Surge protection.** In addition to any built-in surge protection of the fire alarm
3175 panel, each fire alarm panel and power supply panel shall have an added surge
3176 protector installed. The secondary surge protection device must be installed in a manner
3177 that it is isolated a minimum of two feet from the panel as measured along the route of
3178 electrical travel. If data lines run between separate buildings, data line surge/spike
3179 protection is required on each data line where the line enters and/or exits each
3180 building.”
3181

3182 **Carryover DFC Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3183 77. Paragraph [F] 907.6.3, “Initiating Device Identification,” of Subsection [F]
3184 907.6, “Installation and Monitoring,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection Systems,”
3185 of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended
3186 to read as follows:

3187 **"907.6.3 Initiating device identification.** All new or replacement [SSTheSS] fire alarm
3188 systems shall identify the specific initiating device address, location, device type, floor
3189 level where applicable and status including indication of normal, alarm, trouble and
3190 supervisory status, as appropriate. Alarms shall not be permitted to be transmitted as a general
3191 alarm or zone condition.
3192

3193 **Exceptions:**

- 3194 1. Fire alarm systems in single-story buildings less than 22,500 square feet (2090 m²)
3195 in area where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed
3196 in accordance with Section 903.3.3.1.1.
3197 2. Fire alarm systems that only include [~~manual fire alarm boxes, waterflow initiating~~
3198 ~~devices and~~] not more than 10 additional alarm-initiating devices.
3199 3. ~~Special initiating devices that do not support individual device identification.~~
3200 4. ~~Fire alarm systems or devices that are replacing existing equipment.~~
3201

3202 **[F] 907.6.3.1 Annunciation.** The initiating device status shall be annunciated at an
3203 approved on-site location.
3204

3205 Carryover DFC Amendment

3206 78. Paragraph [F] 907.6.6, “Monitoring,” of Subsection [F] 907.6, “Installation
3207 and Monitoring,” of Section 907, “Fire Alarm and Detection Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire
3208 Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

3209 **“[F] 907.6.6 Monitoring.** Fire alarm systems required by this chapter, by other chapters of
3210 this code, or by the *Dallas [International] Fire Code* shall transmit device identification in
3211 accordance with Section 907.6.3 to [be monitored by] an *approved* central station, remote
3212 supervising station, or proprietary supervising station as defined in [accordance with] NFPA
3213 72, or a local alarm which gives audible and visual signals at a constantly attended location. A
3214 constantly attended location is defined as being occupied by 2 or more persons whose
3215 responsibility it is to monitor the fire alarm system.
3216

3217 **Exception:** Monitoring by a supervising station is not required for:

- 3218
- 3219 1. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms required by Section 907.2.11.
 - 3220 2. Smoke detectors in Group I-3 occupancies.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3221

3. *Automatic sprinkler systems* in one- and two-family dwellings.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3222 [F] 907.6.6.1 **Transmission of alarm signals.** Termination of alarm signals to a
3223 supervising station shall be in accordance with NFPA 72.

3224
3225 [F] 907.6.6.2 **MIY Monitoring.** Direct transmission of alarms associated with monitor
3226 it yourself (MIY) transmitters to a public safety answering point (PSAP) shall not be
3227 permitted unless *approved by the fire code official*.

3228
3229 [F] 907.6.6.3 **Termination of monitoring service.** Termination of fire alarm monitoring
3230 services shall be in accordance with Section 901.9 of the *Dallas [International] Fire Code*.

3231
3232 **907.6.6.4 Communication requirements.** All alarm systems, new or replacement, shall
3233 transmit alarm, supervisory and trouble signals descriptively to the approved central
3234 station, remote supervisory station or proprietary supervising station as defined in NFPA
3235 72, with the correct device designation and location of addressable device identification.
3236 Alarms shall not be permitted to be transmitted as a general alarm or zone condition."
3237

3238 Carryover DFC Amendment

3239 79. Subsection [F] 907.7, “Acceptance Tests and Completion,” of Section 907,
3240 “Fire Alarm and Detection Systems,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021

3241 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

3242 “[F] 907.7 **Acceptance tests and completion.** Upon completion of the installation, the fire alarm
3243 system and all fire alarm components shall be tested and approved in accordance with NFPA 72
3244 and Section 901.5 of the *Dallas Fire Code*.
3245

3246 [F] 907.7.1 **Single- and multiple-station alarm devices.** When the installation of the alarm
3247 devices is complete, each device and interconnecting wiring for multiple-station alarm devices
3248 shall be tested in accordance with the smoke alarm provisions of NFPA 72.

3249
3250 [F] 907.7.2 **Record of completion.** A record of completion in accordance with NFPA 72
3251 verifying that the system has been installed and tested in accordance with the *approved* plans
3252 and specifications shall be provided.

3253
3254 [F] 907.7.3 **Instructions.** Operating, testing and maintenance instructions and record drawings
3255 (“as-builts”) and equipment specifications shall be provided at an *approved* location.”
3256

3257 Carryover DFC Amendment

3258 80. Subsection [F] 910.2, “Where Required,” of Section 910, “Smoke and Heat
3259 Removal,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code
3260 is amended to read as follows:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3261 “[F] 910.2 Where required. Smoke and heat vents or a mechanical smoke removal system shall
3262 be installed as required by Sections 910.2.1 through 910.2.3 [~~and 910.2.2~~].
3263

3264 Exceptions:

- 3265
- 3266 1. Frozen food warehouses used solely for storage of Class I and II commodities where
3267 protected by an *approved automatic sprinkler system*.
 - 3268 2. Only manual s[S]moke and heat removal shall [~~not~~] be required in areas of buildings
3269 equipped with early suppression fast-response (ESFR) sprinklers. *Automatic smoke*
3270 *and heat removal is prohibited*.
 - 3271 3. Only manual s[S]moke and heat removal shall [~~not~~] be required in areas of buildings
3272 equipped with control mode special application sprinklers with a response time index
3273 of $50(m*S)^{1/2}$ or less that are listed to control a fire in stored commodities with 12 or
3274 fewer sprinklers. *Automatic smoke and heat removal is prohibited*.

3275 **910.2.1 Group F-1 or S-1.** Smoke and heat vents installed in accordance with Section 910.3
3276 or a mechanical smoke removal system installed in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be
3277 installed in buildings and portions thereof used as a Group F-1 or S-1 occupancy having more
3278 than 50,000 square feet (4645 m²) of undivided area. In occupied portions of a building
3279 equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1
3280 where the upper surface of the story is not a roof assembly, a mechanical smoke removal
3281 system in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be installed.
3282

3283 **Exception:** Group S-1 aircraft repair hangars.
3284

3285 [F] 910.2.2 **High-piled combustible storage.** Smoke and heat removal required by Table
3286 3206.2 of the *Dallas* [~~International~~] *Fire Code* for buildings and portions thereof containing
3287 high-piled combustible storage shall be installed in accordance with Section 910.3 in
3288 un-sprinklered buildings. In buildings and portions thereof containing high-piled combustible
3289 storage equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section
3290 903.3.1.1, a smoke and heat removal system shall be installed in accordance with Section 910.3
3291 or 910.4. In occupied portions of a building equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler*
3292 *system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, where the upper surface of the story is not a roof
3293 assembly, a mechanical smoke removal system in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be
3294 installed.
3295

3296 **910.2.3 Group H.** Smoke and heat vents or a mechanical smoke removal system shall be
3297 installed in buildings and portions thereof used as a Group H occupancy as follows:
3298

- 3299 1. In occupancies classified as Group H-2 or H-3, any of which are more than 15,000
3300 square feet (1394 m²) in single floor area.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3301 Exception: Buildings of noncombustible construction containing only noncombustible
3302 materials.

3304 2. In areas of buildings in Group H used for storing Class 2, 3 and 4 liquid and solid
3305 oxidizers, Class 1 and unclassified detonable organic peroxides, Class 3 and 4 unstable
3306 (reactive) materials, or Class 2 or 3 water-reactive materials as required for a high-
3307 hazard commodity classification.

3309 Exception: Buildings of noncombustible construction containing only noncombustible
3310 materials.”

3312 Carryover DFC Amendment

3313 81. Subsection 910.3, “Smoke and Heat Vents,” of Section 910 “Smoke and Heat

3314 Removal,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Fire Code is

3315 amended by adding a new Paragraph 910.3.4, “Vent Operation,” to read as follows:

3316
3317 “[F] 910.3.4 Vent operation. Smoke and heat vents shall be capable of being operated by
3318 *approved* automatic and manual means. Automatic operation of smoke and heat vents shall
3319 conform to the provisions of Sections 910.2.1 through 910.2.3.

3320
3321 [F] 910.3.4.1 Sprinklered buildings. Where installed in buildings equipped with an
3322 approved automatic sprinkler system, smoke and heat vents shall be designed to operate
3323 automatically.

3324
3325 The automatic operating mechanism of the smoke and heat vents shall operate at a
3326 temperature rating at least 100°F (approximately 38°C) greater than the temperature rating
3327 of the sprinklers installed.

3328
3329 Exception: Manual only system per Section 910.2.

3330
3331 [F] 910.3.4.2 Nonsprinklered buildings. Where installed in buildings not equipped with
3332 an approved automatic sprinkler system, smoke and heat vents shall operate automatically
3333 by actuation of a heat-responsive device rated at between 100°F (38°C) and 220°F (104°C)
3334 above ambient.

3335
3336 Exception: Listed gravity-operated drop out vents.”

3337
3338 [F] 910.3.5 Fusible link temperature rating. Where vents are installed in areas provided
3339 with automatic fire sprinklers and the vents operate by fusible link, the fusible link shall
3340 have a temperature rating of 360°F (182°C)

3341 Carryover DFC Amendment

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3343 **82. Subsection [F]910.4, “Mechanical Smoke Removal Systems,” of Section 910,**
3344 **“Smoke and Heat Removal,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021**
3345 **International Fire Code is amended to read as follows:**

3346 **“[F] 910.4 Mechanical smoke removal systems.** Mechanical smoke removal systems shall be
3347 designed and installed in accordance with Sections 910.4.1 through 910.4.7.

3348
3349 **910.4.1 Automatic sprinklers required.** The building shall be equipped throughout with an
3350 *approved automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

3351
3352 **910.4.2 Exhaust fan construction.** Exhaust fans that are part of a mechanical smoke removal
3353 system shall be rated for operation at 221°F (105°C). Exhaust fan motors shall be located
3354 outside of the exhaust fan air stream.

3355
3356 **910.4.3 System design criteria.** The mechanical smoke removal system shall be sized to
3357 exhaust the building at a minimum rate of two air changes per hour based upon the volume of
3358 the building or portion thereof without contents. The capacity of each exhaust fan shall not
3359 exceed 30,000 cubic feet per minute (14.2 m³/sec).

3360
3361 **910.4.3.1 Makeup air.** Makeup air openings shall be provided within 6 feet (1829 mm)
3362 of the floor level. Operation of makeup air openings shall be [~~manual or~~] automatic. The
3363 minimum gross area of makeup air inlets shall be 8 square feet per 1,000 cubic feet per
3364 minute (0.74 m² per 0.4719 m³/s) of smoke exhaust.

3365
3366 **910.4.4 Activation.** The mechanical smoke removal system shall be activated automatically
3367 by the automatic sprinkler system or by an approved fire detection system. Individual manual
3368 controls shall also be provided [only].

3370 **Exception:** Manual only systems per Section 910.2.”
3371

3372 **Carryover DFC Amendment**

3373 **83. Subsection [F]912.2, “Location,” of Section 912, “Fire Department**
3374 **Connections,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building**
3375 **Code is amended to read as follows:**

3376 **“[F]912.2 Location.** With respect to hydrants, driveways, buildings and landscaping, fire
3377 department connections shall be so located that fire apparatus and hose connected to supply the
3378 system will not obstruct access to the buildings for other fire apparatus. Fire apparatus access
3379 roads shall be required within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of any fire department hose connections. A
3380 [The location of] fire department hose connection[s] shall be located within 400 feet (122 m) of
3381 a fire hydrant and approved by the fire code official.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3382 [F] **912.2.1 Visible location.** Fire department connections shall be located on the street side
3383 of buildings, fully visible and recognizable from the street or nearest point of fire department
3384 vehicle access or as otherwise *approved* by the *fire code official*.

3385
3386 [F] **912.2.2 Existing buildings.** On existing buildings, wherever the fire department
3387 connection is not visible to approaching fire apparatus, the fire department connection shall be
3388 indicated by an *approved* sign mounted on the street front or on the side of the building. Such
3389 sign shall have the letters “FDC” not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high and words in letters not
3390 less than 2 inches (51 mm) high or an arrow to indicate the location. Such signs shall be subject
3391 to the approval of the *fire code official*.

3392
3393 **912.2.3 Remote and free-standing fire department connections.** Free-standing fire
3394 department connections shall be internally and externally galvanized, permanently marked
3395 with the address being served, or portion thereof, and provided with approved locking
3396 caps/covers. Means to service the drain/check valve shall be provided.”
3397

3398 **Carryover COG/DFC Amendment**

3399 **84. Subsection [F] 913.1, “General,” of Section 913, “Fire Pumps,” of Chapter 9,**
3400 **“Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as**
3401 **follows:**

3402 [F] **913.1 General.** Where provided, fire pumps shall be installed in accordance with this section
3403 and NFPA 20. When located on the ground level at an exterior wall, the fire pump room shall be
3404 provided with an exterior fire department access door that is not less than 3 feet in width and 6 feet
3405 – 8 inches in height, regardless of any interior doors that are provided. A key box shall be provided
3406 at this door, as required by Section 506.1 of the *Dallas Fire Code*.
3407

3408 **Exception:** When it is necessary to locate the fire pump room on other levels or not at an
3409 exterior wall, the corridor leading to the fire pump room access from the exterior of the building
3410 shall be provided with equivalent fire resistance as that required for the pump room, or as
3411 approved by the *fire code official*. Access keys shall be provided in the key box as required by
3412 Section 506.1 of the *Dallas Fire Code*.
3413

3414 **Carryover DFC Amendment**

3415 **85. Subsection [F] 913.4, “Valve Supervision,” of Section 913, “Fire Pumps,” of**
3416 **Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended**
3417 **to read as follows:**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3418 “[F] 913.4 Valve supervision. Where provided, the fire pump suction, discharge and bypass
3419 valves, and isolation valves on the backflow prevention device or assembly shall be supervised
3420 open by one of the following methods:

- 3421
- 3422 1. Central-station, proprietary or remote-station signaling service.
 - 3423
 - 3424 2. Local signaling service that will cause the sounding of an audible signal at a *constantly*
3425 *attended location*.
 - 3426
 - 3427 3. Locking valves open when approved by the fire code official.
 - 3428
 - 3429 4. Sealing of valves and *approved* weekly recorded inspection where valves are located within
3430 fenced enclosures under the control of the owner when approved by the fire code official.
 - 3431

3432 [F] 913.4.1 Test outlet valve supervision. Fire pump test outlet valves shall be supervised in
3433 the closed position.”

3434
3435 **Carryover DFC Amendment**
3436 86. Section 913, “Fire Pumps,” of Chapter 9, “Fire Protection Systems,” of the
3437

3438 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subsection [F] 913.6, “Pump
3439 Supervision,” to read as follows:

3440 “[F] 913.6 Pump supervision. Where the pump room is not constantly attended, the fire pump
3441 shall transmit a supervisory signal to indicate loss of power, phase reversal and pump running
3442 conditions in accordance with NFPA 20.”

3443

3444	3448	CHAPTER 10
3445	3449	MEANS OF EGRESS

3446 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**
3447

3450 87. Subsection 1001.1, “General,” of Section 1001, “Administration,” of Chapter

3451 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as
3452 follows:

3453 “1001.1 General. Buildings or portions thereof shall be provided with a *means of egress* system
3454 as required by this chapter. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design, construction
3455 and arrangement of *means of egress* components required to provide an *approved means of egress*
3456 from structures and portions thereof. Provisions of this code shall govern in the event of conflicts
3457 between this chapter and the corresponding chapter of the Dallas Fire Code.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3458 Carryover Dallas Amendment

3459 **88. Paragraph 1004.5, “Areas Without Fixed Seating, of Section 1004, “Occupant**
3460 **Load,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
3461 **amended to read as follows:**

3462 **“1004.5 Areas without fixed seating.** The number of occupants shall be computed at the rate
3463 of one occupant per unit of area as prescribed in Table 1004.5 For areas without *fixed seating*,
3464 the occupant load shall be not less than that number determined by dividing the floor area under
3465 consideration by the *occupant load* factor assigned to the function of the space as set forth in
3466 Table 1004.5 Where an intended function is not listed in Table 1004.5, the *building official*
3467 shall establish a function based on a listed function that most nearly resembles the intended
3468 function.

3469
3470 ~~[**Exception:** Where *approved by the building official*, the actual number of occupants for~~
3471 ~~whom each occupied space, floor or building is designed, although less than those~~
3472 ~~determined by calculation, shall be permitted to be used in the determination of the design~~
3473 ~~*occupant load.*.]”~~
3474

3475 Carryover Dallas Amendment

3476 **89. Subsection 1004.7, “Outdoor Areas,” of Section 1004, “Occupant Load,” of**
3477 **Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read**
3478 **as follows:**

3479 **“1004.7 Outdoor areas.** *Yards, patios, courts* and similar outdoor areas accessible to and usable
3480 by the building occupants shall be provided with *means of egress* as required by this chapter. The
3481 *occupant load* of such outdoor areas shall be assigned by the *building official* in accordance with
3482 the anticipated use. Where outdoor areas are to be used by persons in addition to the occupants of
3483 the building, and the path of egress travel from the outdoor areas passes through the building,
3484 *means of egress* requirements for the building shall be based on the sum of the *occupant loads* of
3485 the building plus the outdoor areas.

3486
3487 **Exceptions:**

- 3488
- 3489 1. Outdoor areas used exclusively for service of the building need only have one *means*
3490 *of egress*.
 - 3491 2. The occupant load of the outdoor area need not be added to the building’s total occupant
3492 load if:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3493 2.1 The [Both] outdoor areas are located at grade and associated with Group R-3 and
3494 individual dwelling units of Group R-2. Means of egress must be provided from
3495 the outdoor area in accordance with this chapter.
3496

3497 2.2 The outdoor areas are not located at grade and associated with Group R-3 and
3498 individual dwelling units of Group R-2 and the outdoor area occupies not more than
3499 10 percent of the area of the dwelling unit of a nonsprinklered building or not less
3500 more than 20 percent of the area of the dwelling unit of a building provided
3501 throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system. Means of egress must be
3502 provided from the outdoor area in accordance with this chapter.”
3503

New COG Amendment

3504 **90. Subsection 1006.2.1, “Egress Based on Occupant Load and Common Path of**
3505 **Egress Travel Distance,” of section 1006 “Number of Exits and Exit Access Doorways,” of**
3506 **Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read**
3507 **as follows:**
3508

3509 **“1006.2 Egress from spaces.** Rooms, areas or spaces including *mezzanines*, within a *story*
3510 *or basement* shall be provided with the number of *exits* or access *to exits* in accordance with this
3511 section.
3512

3513 **1006.2.1 Egress based on occupant load and common path of egress travel distance.** Two
3514 *exits* or *exit access* doorways from any space shall be provided where the design *occupant load* or
3515 the *common path of egress travel* distance exceeds the values listed in Table 1006.2.1. The
3516 cumulative *occupant load* from adjacent rooms, areas or spaces shall be determined in accordance
3517 with Section 1004.2.

Exceptions:

- 3518
- 3519 1. The number of *exits* from foyers, lobbies, vestibules, or similar spaces need not be based
3520 on cumulative *occupant loads* for areas discharging through such spaces, but the capacity
3521 of the *exits* from such spaces shall be based on applicable cumulative *occupant loads*.
 - 3522 2. Care *suites* in Group I-2 occupancies complying with Section 407.4.
 - 3523 3. Unoccupied rooftop mechanical rooms and penthouses are not required to comply with the
3524 common path of egress travel distance measurement.
3525

Carryover Dallas Amendment

3526 **91. Table 1006.2.1, “Spaces With One Exit or Exit Access Doorway,” of Subsection**
3527 **1006.2.1, “Egress Based on Occupant Load and Common Path of Egress Travel Distance,”**
3528 **of Section 1006, “Number of Exits and Exit Access Doorways,” of Chapter 10, “Means of**
3529 **Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**
3530

“TABLE 1006.2.1

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3533
3534

SPACES WITH ONE EXIT OR EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY

OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM OCCUPANT LOAD OF SPACE	MAXIMUM COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL DISTANCE (feet) ^h		
		Without Sprinkler System (feet)		With Sprinkler System (feet)
		Occupant Load		
		OL ≤ 30	OL > 30	
A ^c , E, M	49	75	75	75 ^a
B	49	100	75	100 ^a
F	49	75	75	100 ^a
H-1, H-2, H-3	3	NP	NP	25 ^b
H-4, H-5	10	NP	NP	75 ^b
I-1, I-2 ^d , I-4	10	NP	NP	75 ^a
I-3	10	NP	NP	100 ^a
R-1	10	NP	NP	75 ^a
R-2	20	NP	NP	125 ^a
R-3 ^e	20	NP	NP	125 ^{a, g}
R-4 ^e	20	NP	NP	125 ^{a, g}
S ^f	29	100	75	100 ^a
U	49	100	75	75 ^a

3535
3536
3537
3538
3539
3540
3541
3542
3543
3544
3545
3546
3547
3548

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NP = Not Permitted

- a. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. See Section 903 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.
- b. Group H occupancies equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.
- c. For a room or space used for assembly purposes having fixed seating, see Section 1030.8.
- d. For the travel distance limitations in Group I-2, see Section 407.4.
- e. The common path of egress travel distance in a Group R-3 occupancy located in a mixed occupancy building.
- f. The length of common path of egress travel distance in a Group S-2 open parking garage shall be not more than 100 feet.
- g. For the travel distance limitations in Groups R-3 and R-4 equipped throughout with a automatic sprinkler

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3549

system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3, see Section 1006.2.2.6.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3550 h. Not applicable to Single-family and Duplex uses as defined in the *Dallas Development Code* or to *Townhome*
3551 *and Multiple Building Townhouse structures.*
3552

3553 Carryover Dallas Amendment

3554 **92. Paragraph 1006.2.2, “Egress Based on Use,” of Subsection 1006.2, “Egress**
3555 **from Spaces,” of Section 1006, “Number of Exits and Exit Access Doorways,” of Chapter 10,**
3556 **“Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

3557 **1006.2.2 Egress based on use.** The numbers of *exits* or access to *exits* shall be provided in the
3558 uses described in Sections 1006.2.2.1 through 1006.2.2.6.

3559
3560 **1006.2.2.1 Boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms.** Two *exit access doorways* are
3561 required in boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms where the area is over 500 square feet (46
3562 m²) and any fuel-fired equipment exceeds 400,000 British thermal units (Btu) (422 000
3563 KJ) input capacity. Where two *exit access doorways* are required, one is permitted to be a
3564 fixed ladder or an *alternating tread device*. *Exit access doorways* shall be separated by a
3565 horizontal distance equal to one-half the length of the maximum overall diagonal
3566 dimension of the room.

3567
3568 **1006.2.2.2 Refrigeration machinery rooms.** Machinery rooms larger than 1,000 square
3569 feet (93 m²) shall have not less than two *exits* or *exit access doorways*. Where two *exit*
3570 *access doorways* are required, one such doorway is permitted to be served by a fixed ladder
3571 or an *alternating tread device*. *Exit access doorways* shall be separated by a horizontal
3572 distance equal to one-half the maximum horizontal dimension of the room.

3573
3574 All portions of machinery rooms shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an *exit* or *exit*
3575 *access doorway*. An increase in exit access travel distance is permitted in accordance with
3576 Section 1017.1.

3577
3578 *Exit* and *exit access doorways* shall swing in the direction of egress travel, regardless
3579 of the *occupant load* served. *Exit* and *exit access doorways* shall be tight fitting and *self-*
3580 *closing*.

3581
3582 **1006.2.2.3 Refrigerated rooms or spaces.** Rooms or spaces having a floor area larger
3583 than 1,000 square feet (93 m²), containing a refrigerant evaporator and maintained at a
3584 temperature below 68°F (20°C), shall have access to not less than two *exits* or *exit access*
3585 *doorways*.

3586
3587 *Exit access* travel distance shall be determined as specified in Section 1017.1, but all
3588 portions of a refrigerated room or space shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an *exit* or
3589 *exit access doorway* where such rooms are not protected by an approved *automatic*
3590 *sprinkler system*. Egress is allowed through adjoining refrigerated rooms or spaces.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3591 **Exception:** Where using refrigerants in quantities limited to the amounts based on the
3592 volume set forth in the *Dallas [International] Mechanical Code*.
3593

3594 **1006.2.2.4 Electrical Rooms.** The location and number of exit or exit access doorways
3595 shall be provided for electrical rooms in accordance with Section 110.26 of NFPA 70 for
3596 electrical equipment rated 1,000 volts or less, and Section 110.33 of NFPA 70 for electrical
3597 equipment rated over 1,000 volts. Panic hardware shall be provided where required in
3598 accordance with Section 1010.2.9.2
3599

3600 **1006.2.2.5 Vehicular ramps.** Vehicular ramps shall not be considered as an exit access
3601 ramp unless pedestrian facilities are provided.
3602

3603 **1006.2.2.6 Groups R-3 and R-4.** Where Group R-3 occupancies are permitted by Section
3604 903.2.8 to be protected by an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with
3605 Section 903.3.1.3, the exit access travel distance for Group R-3 shall be not more than 125
3606 feet (38 00 mm). Where Group R-4 occupancies are permitted by Section 903.2.8 be
3607 protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3,
3608 the *exit access* travel distance for Group R-4 shall be not more than 75 feet (22 860 mm).
3609

3610 **1006.2.2.7 Day care means of egress** Day care facilities, rooms or spaces where care is
3611 provided for more than 10 that are 2 ½ years of age or less shall have access to not less
3612 than two exits or exit access doorways. Rooms normally occupied by prekindergarten,
3613 kindergarten, or first grade students shall be located in accordance with Section 504 of this
3614 code.
3615

3616 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

3617 **93. Subsection 1007.1.1, “Two Exits or Exit Access Doorways,” of Subsection**

3618 **1007.1 “General,” of Section 1007, “Exit or Exit Access Doorway Configuration,” of**

3619 **Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Fire Code is amended to read as**

3620 **follows:**

3621 **“1007.1.1 Two exits or exit access doorways.** Where two exits, exit access doorways, exit
3622 access stairways or ramps, or any combination thereof, are required from any portion of the
3623 exit access, they shall be placed a distance apart equal to not less than one-half of the length
3624 of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the building or area to be served measured in
3625 a straight line between them. Interlocking or scissor stairways shall be counted as one exit
3626 stairway.

3627 **Exceptions:**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3628 1. Where interior exit stairways or ramps are interconnected by a 1-hour fire-
3629 resistance-rated corridor conforming to the requirements of Section 1020, the
3630 required exit separation shall be measured along the shortest direct line of travel
3631 within the corridor.

3632 2. Where a building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in
3633 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the separation distance shall be not
3634 less than one-third ($\frac{1}{3}$) of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension
3635 of the area served.

3636 3. Interlocking stairs are permitted to be counted as two exits if all of the following
3637 conditions are met:
3638

3639 3.1. The building is not a high-rise;
3640

3641 3.2. The distance between exit doors complies with Section 1007.1;
3642

3643 3.3. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in
3644 accordance with the Section 903.3.1.1.
3645

3646 3.4. Each stairway is separated from each other and from the remainder of the
3647 building by construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours with
3648 no openings or penetrations between the stairways other than those for standpipes
3649 and automatic sprinkler systems. The separation between the stairways is permitted
3650 to be constructed as a single wall; and
3651

3652 3.5. Each exit meets all of the requirements in Section 1023 including the smokeproof
3653 enclosure provisions of Section 909.20.
3654

3655 **1007.1.1.1 Measurement point.** The separation distance required in Section 1007.1.1 shall
3656 be measured in accordance with the following:

- 3657
- 3658 1. The separation distance to exit or exit access doorways shall be measured to any point
3659 along the width of the doorway.
 - 3660
 - 3661 2. The separation distance to exit access stairways shall be measured to the closest riser.
3662
 - 3663 3. The separation distance to exit access ramps shall be measured to the start of the ramp
3664 run.”
3665

3666 **Carryover Dallas Amendment***

3667 **94. Subsection 1007.1.3 “Remoteness of exit access stairways or ramps,” of Section**
3668 **1007, “Exit or Exit Access Doorway Configuration,” of Subchapter 10, “Means of Egress,”**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3669 of 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a **new** Subparagraph 1007.1.3.2,
3670 “Interlocking Stairs When Allowed as Separate Exits With Three or More Exits or Exit
3671 Access Doorways,” to read as follows:

3672
3673 **1007.1.3 Remoteness of exit access stairways or ramps.** Where two *exit access stairways* or
3674 ramps provide the required *means of egress* to exits at another story, the required separation
3675 distance shall be maintained for all portions of such *exit access stairways* or *ramps*.

3676
3677 **1007.1.3.1 Three or more exit access stairways or ramps.** Where more than two *exit access*
3678 *stairways* or *ramps* provide the required *means of egress*, not less than two shall be arranged in
3679 accordance with Section 1007.1.3.

3680
3681 **“1007.1.3.2 Interlocking stairs when allowed as separate exits with three or more exits or exit**
3682 **access doorways.** Where access to three or more *exits* is required, not less than two *exit* or *exit*
3683 *access doorways* shall be arranged in accordance with the provisions of Section 1007.1.1.
3684 Additional required *exit* or *exit access doorways* shall be arranged a reasonable distance apart so
3685 that if one becomes blocked, the others will be available. In addition, the interlocking stairs *exit*
3686 *doorways* terminating at the exit discharge shall be arranged a reasonable distance apart equivalent
3687 to the exit separation required in Section 1007.1.1 and the smokeproof enclosure requirements.”
3688

3689 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

3690 **95. Subsection 1009.1, “Accessible Means of Egress Required,” of Section 1009,**

3691 **“Accessible Means of Egress,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International**
3692 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

3693 **“1009.1 Accessible means of egress required.** *Accessible means of egress* shall comply with this
3694 section. *Accessible* spaces shall be provided with not less than one *accessible means of egress*.
3695 Where more than one *means of egress* are required by Section 1006.2 or 1006.3 from any
3696 *accessible* space, each *accessible* portion of the space shall be served by not less than two
3697 *accessible means of egress*.

3698 **Exceptions:**

- 3699
- 3700
 - 3701 1. One accessible *means of egress* is required from an *accessible mezzanine* level in
3702 accordance with Section 1009.3, 1009.4 or 1009.5.
 - 3703
 - 3704 2. In assembly areas with ramped *aisles* or stepped *aisles*, one *accessible means of egress*
3705 is permitted where the *common path of egress travel* is *accessible* and meets the
3706 requirements in Section 1030.8.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 3707 3. Accessible means of egress may satisfy this section if designed in accordance with
3708 Article 9102, “Architectural Barriers,” of *Vernon’s Texas Civil Statutes* and the “Texas
3709 Accessibility Standards of the Architectural Barriers Act,” adopted by the Texas
3710 Commission on Licensing and Regulation and built in accordance with a state certified
3711 plan, including any variances or waivers granted by the state.”
3712

3713 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

3714 **96. Subsection 1009.5, “Platform Lifts,” of Section 1009, “Accessible Means of**
3715 **Egress,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
3716 **amended to read as follows:**

3717 **“1009.5 Platform lifts.** Platform (wheelchair) lifts shall be permitted to serve as part of an
3718 *accessible means of egress* where allowed as part of a required *accessible route* in Section 1110.9
3719 except for Item 10. Standby power for the platform lift shall be provided in accordance with
3720 Chapter 27.

3721
3722 **1009.5.1 Openness.** Platform lifts on an *accessible means of egress* shall not be installed in a
3723 hoistway as defined in ASME A17.1.”
3724

3725 **97. Subsection 1010.1, “Doors,” of Section 1010, “Doors, Gates and Turnstiles,”**
3726 **of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to**
3727 **read as follows:**

3728 **“1010.1 General.** Doors in the *Means of egress* shall comply with the requirements of Sections
3729 1010.1.1 through 1010.3.4. Exterior *exit* doors shall also comply with the requirements of Section
3730 1022.2. Gates in the *means of egress* shall comply with the requirements of Section 1010.4 and
3731 1010.4.1. Turnstiles in *means of egress* shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1010.5
3732 through 1010.5.4.

3733
3734 Doors, gates and turnstiles provided for egress purposes in numbers greater than required by
3735 this code shall meet the requirements of this section.

3736
3737 Doors in the *Means of egress* shall be readily distinguishable from the adjacent construction
3738 and finishes such that the doors are easily recognizable as doors. Mirrors or similar reflecting
3739 materials shall not be used on *means of egress* doors. *Means of egress* doors shall not be concealed
3740 by curtains, drapes, decorations or similar materials.

3741
3742 Security and electronic locking devices affecting *means of egress* shall be subject to approval
3743 by the building official and subject to inspections by the fire code official.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3744 **1010.1.1 Size of doors.** The required capacity of each door opening shall be sufficient for the
3745 *occupant load* thereof and shall provide a minimum clear width of 32 inches (813 mm). The
3746 clear openings of doorways with swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the
3747 door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees (1.57 rad). Where this section requires a
3748 minimum clear width of 32 inches (813 mm) and a door opening includes two door leaves
3749 without a mullion, one leaf shall provide a minimum clear opening with of 32 inches (813
3750 mm). In Group I-2, doors serving as *means of egress* doors where used for the movement of
3751 beds shall provide a minimum clear opening width of 41½ inches (1054 mm). The minimum
3752 clear opening height of doors shall be not less than 80 inches (2032 mm).
3753

3754 **Exceptions:**

- 3755 1. In Group R-2 and R-3 *dwelling* and *sleeping units* that are not required to be an
3756 Accessible unit, Type A unit or Type B unit, the minimum width shall not apply to
3757 door openings that are not part of the required *means of egress*.
3758
- 3759 2. In Group I-3, door openings to resident *sleeping units* that are not required to be an
3760 Accessible unit shall have a minimum clear width of not less than 28 inches (711
3761 mm).
3762
- 3763 3. Door openings to storage closets less than 10 square feet (0.93 m²) in area shall not
3764 be limited by the minimum clear opening width.
3765
- 3766 4. The maximum width of door leaves in revolving doors that comply with Section
3767 1010.3.1 shall not be limited.
3768
- 3769 5. The maximum width of door leaves in *power operated doors* that comply with
3770 Section 1010.3.2 shall not be limited.
3771
- 3772 6. Door openings within a *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* shall not have a minimum
3773 clear height of 78 inches (1981 mm).
3774
- 3775 7. In *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* that are not required to be Accessible, Type A
3776 or Type B units, exterior door openings other than the required *exit* door shall have
3777 a minimum clear opening height of 76 inches (1930 mm).
3778
- 3779 8. In Groups I-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4, in *dwelling* and *sleeping units* that are not required
3780 to be Accessible, Type A or Type B units, the minimum clear opening widths shall
3781 not apply to interior egress doors.
3782
- 3783 9. Door openings required to be *accessible* within Type B units shall have a minimum
3784 clear width of 31.75 inches (806 mm).
3785
- 3786 10. Doors to walk-in freezers and coolers less than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) in area
3787 shall have a maximum width of 60 inches (1524 mm) nominal.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3788 11. Doors serving nonaccessible single user shower or sauna compartments, toilet stalls
3789 or dressing, fitting or changing rooms shall have a minimum clear opening width
3790 of 20 inches (508 mm).
3791

3792 **1010.1.1.1 Projections into clear width.** There shall not be projections into the required
3793 clear opening width lower than 34 inches (864 mm) above the floor or ground. Projections
3794 into the clear opening width between 34 inches (864 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) above
3795 the floor or ground shall not exceed 4 inches (102 mm).
3796

3797 **Exception:** Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm)
3798 minimum above the floor.
3799

3800 **1010.1.2 Egress door types.** Egress doors shall be of the pivoted or side-hinged swinging
3801 type.
3802

3803 **Exceptions:**

- 3804
- 3805 1. Private garages, office areas, factory and storage areas with an *occupant load* of 10
3806 or less.
 - 3807
 - 3808 2. Group I-3 occupancies used as a place of detention.
3809
 - 3810 3. Critical or intensive care patient rooms within suites of health care facilities.
3811
 - 3812 4. Doors within or serving a single *dwelling unit* in Groups R-2 and R-3.
3813
 - 3814 5. In other than Group H occupancies, revolving doors complying with Section
3815 1010.3.1.
3816
 - 3817 6. In other than Group H occupancies, special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion
3818 or folding door assemblies complying with Section 1010.3.3.
3819
 - 3820 7. Power-operated doors in accordance with Section 1010.3.2.
3821
 - 3822 8. Doors serving a bathroom within an individual *sleeping unit* in Group R-1.
3823
 - 3824 9. In other than Group H occupancies, manually operated horizontal sliding doors are
3825 permitted in a *means of egress* from spaces with an *occupant load* of 10 or less.
3826

3827 **1010.1.2.1 Direction of swing.** Side-hinged swinging doors, pivoted doors and balanced doors
3828 shall swing in the direction of egress travel where serving a room or area containing an
3829 *occupant load* of 50 or more persons or a Group H occupancy.
3830

3831 **1010.1.3 Forces to unlatch and open doors.** The forces to unlatch doors shall comply with
3832 the following:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 3833 1. Where door hardware operates by push or pull, the operational force to unlatch the door
3834 shall not exceed 15 pounds (67 N)
3835 2. Where door hardware operates by rotation, the operational force to unlatch the door
3836 shall not exceed 28 inch-pounds (315 N-cm).

3837 The force to open doors shall comply with the following:
3838

- 3839 1. For interior swinging egress doors that are manually operated, other than doors required
3840 to be fire rated, the force for pushing or pulling open the door shall not exceed 5 pounds
3841 (22 N).
3842 2. For other swinging doors, sliding doors or folding doors, and doors required to be fire
3843 rated, the door shall require not more than a 30-pound (133 N) force to be set in motion
3844 and shall move to a full-open position when subjected to not more than a 15-pound (67
3845 N) force.
3846

3847 **1010.1.3.1 Location of applied forces.** Forces shall be applied to the latch side of the
3848 door.
3849

3850 **1010.1.3.2 Manual horizontal sliding doors.** Where a manual horizontal sliding door is
3851 required to latch, the latch or other mechanism shall prevent the door from rebounding into
3852 a partially open position when the door is closed.

3853 **1010.1.4 Floor elevation.** There shall be a floor or landing on each side of a door. Such floor
3854 or landing shall be at the same elevation on each side of the door. Landings shall be level
3855 except for exterior landings, which are permitted to have a slope not to exceed 0.25 unit vertical
3856 in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).
3857

3858 **Exceptions:**

- 3859
3860 1. At doors serving individual *dwelling units* or *sleeping units* in Groups R-2 and R-3
3861 a door is permitted to open at the top step of an interior flight of stairs, provided
3862 that the door does not swing over the top step.
3863
3864 2. At exterior doors serving Group F, H, R-2 and S and where such doors are not part
3865 of an accessible route, the landing at an exterior door shall not be more than 7 inches
3866 (178 mm) below the landing on the egress side of the door, provided that the door,
3867 other than an exterior storm or screen door, does not swing over the landing.
3868
3869 3. At exterior doors serving Group U and individual *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*
3870 in Groups R-2 and R-3, and where such units are not required to be *Accessible units*,
3871 *Type A units* or *Type B units*, the landing at an exterior doorway shall be not more
3872 than 7¾ inches (197 mm) below the landing on the egress side of the door. Such
3873 doors, shall be permitted to swing over either landing.
3874
3875 4. Variations in elevation due to differences in finish materials, but not more than ½
3876 inch (12.7 mm).

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3877 5. Exterior decks, patios or balconies that are part of *Type B dwelling units* or *sleeping*
3878 *units*, that have impervious surfaces and that are not more than 4 inches (102 mm)
3879 below the finished floor level of the adjacent interior space of the *dwelling unit* or
3880 *sleeping unit*.

3881
3882 6. Doors serving equipment spaces not required to be *accessible* in accordance with
3883 Section 1103.2.9 and serving an *occupant load* of five or less shall be permitted to
3884 have a landing on one side to be not more than 7 inches (178 mm) above or below
3885 the landing on the egress side of the door.
3886

3887 **1010.1.5 Landings at doors.** Landings shall have a width not less than the width of the
3888 *stairway* or the door, whichever is greater. Doors in the fully open position shall not reduce a
3889 required dimension by more than 7 inches (178 mm). When a landing serves an *occupant load*
3890 of 50 or more, doors in any position shall not reduce the landing to less than one-half its
3891 required width. Landings shall have a length measured in the direction of travel of not less
3892 than 44 inches (1118 mm).
3893

3894 **Exception:** Landing length in the direction of travel in Groups R-3 and U and within
3895 individual units of Group R-2 need not exceed 36 inches (914 mm).
3896

3897 **1010.1.6 Thresholds.** Thresholds at doorways shall not exceed $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (19.1 mm) in height
3898 above the finished floor or landing for sliding doors serving *dwelling units* or $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12.7
3899 mm) above the finished floor or landing for other doors. Raised thresholds and floor level
3900 changes greater than $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) at doorways shall be beveled with a slope not greater
3901 than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope).
3902

3903 **Exceptions:**

3904 1. In occupancy Group R-2 or R-3, threshold heights for sliding and side-hinged
3905 exterior doors shall be permitted to be up to $7\frac{3}{4}$ inches (197 mm) in height if all of
3906 the following apply:
3907

3908 1.1. The door is not part of the required *means of egress*.
3909

3910 1.2. The door is not part of an *accessible route* as required by Chapter 11.
3911

3912 1.3. The door is not part of and *Accessible unit*, *Type A unit* or *Type B unit*.
3913

3914 2. In *Type B units*, where Exception 5 to Section 1010.1.4 permits a 4-inch (102 mm)
3915 elevation change at the door, the threshold height on the exterior side of the door
3916 shall not exceed $4\frac{3}{4}$ inches (120 mm) in height above the exterior deck, patio or
3917 balcony for sliding doors or $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches (114 mm) above the exterior deck, patio or
3918 balcony for other doors.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3919 **1010.1.7 Door arrangement.** Space between two doors in a series shall be 48 inches (1219
3920 mm) minimum plus the width of a door swinging into the space. Doors in a series shall swing
3921 either in the same direction or away from the space between the doors.
3922

3923 **Exceptions:**

- 3924 1. The minimum distance between horizontal sliding power-operated doors in a series
3925 shall be 48 inches (1219 mm).
3926
- 3927 2. Storm and screen doors serving individual *dwelling units* in Groups R-2 and R-3
3928 need not be spaced 48 inches (1219 mm) from the other door.
3929
- 3930 3. Doors within individual *dwelling units* in Groups R-2 and R-3 other than within
3931 *Type A dwelling units*.
3932
3933

3934 **1010.2 Door operations.** Except as specifically permitted by this section egress doors shall
3935 be readily openable from the egress side without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.
3936

3937 **1010.2.1 Unlatching.** The unlatching of any door or leaf for egress shall require not more
3938 than one motion in a single linear or rotational direction to release all latching and all
3939 locking devices.
3940

3941 **Exceptions:**

- 3942 1. Places of detention or restraint.
3943
- 3944 2. Where manually operated bolt locks are permitted by Section 1010.2.5.
3945
- 3946 3. Doors with automatic flush bolts as permitted by Section 1010.2.4, Item 4.
3947
- 3948 4. Doors from individual *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* of Group R
3949 occupancies as permitted by Section 1010.2.4, Item 5.
3950

3951 **1010.2.2 Hardware.** Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices on
3952 doors required to be *accessible* by Chapter 11 shall not require tight grasping, tight
3953 pinching or twisting of the wrist to operate.
3954

3955 **1010.2.3 Hardware height.** Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices
3956 shall be installed 34 inches (846 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above
3957 the finished floor. Locks used only for security purposes and not used for normal operation
3958 are permitted at any height.
3959

3960 **Exception:** Access doors or gates in barrier walls and fences protecting pools, spas and
3961 hot tubs shall be permitted to have operable parts of the release of latch on self-latching
3962 devices at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground, provided

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

3963 the self-latching devices are not also self-locking devices operated by means of a key,
3964 electronic opener or integral combination lock.
3965

3966 **1010.2.4 Locks and latches.** Locks and latches shall be permitted to prevent operation of
3967 doors where any of the following exists:
3968

- 3969 1. Places of detention or restraint.
3970
- 3971 2. In Group I-1, Condition 2 and Group I-2 occupancies where the clinical needs of
3972 persons receiving care require containment or where persons receiving care pose a
3973 security threat, provided that all clinical staff can readily unlock doors at all times,
3974 and all such locks are keyed to keys carried by all clinical staff at all times or all
3975 clinical staff have the codes or other means necessary to operate the locks at all
3976 times.
3977
- 3978 3. In buildings in occupancy Group A having an *occupant load* of 300 or less, Groups
3979 B, F, M and S, and in *places of religious worship*, the main exterior door or doors
3980 are permitted to be equipped with key-operated locking devices from the egress
3981 side provided:
3982
 - 3983 3.1. The locking device is readily distinguishable as locked.
3984
 - 3985 3.2. A readily visible durable sign is posted on the egress side or adjacent to
3986 the door stating: THIS DOOR TO REMAIN UNLOCKED WHEN THIS
3987 SPACE IS OCCUPIED. The sign shall be in letters 1 inch (25 mm) high on a
3988 contrasting background.
3989
 - 3990 3.3. The use of the key-operated locking device is revocable by the *building*
3991 *official* for due cause.
3992
- 3993 4. Where egress doors are used in pairs, *approved* automatic flush bolts shall be
3994 permitted to be used, provided that the door leaf having the automatic flush bolts
3995 has no doorknob or surface-mounted hardware.
3996
- 3997 5. Doors from individual *dwelling* or *sleeping units* of Group R occupancies having
3998 an *occupant load* of 10 or less are permitted to be equipped with a night latch, dead
3999 bolt or security chain, provided such devices are openable from the inside without
4000 the use of a key or tool.
4001
- 4002 6. *Fire doors* after the minimum elevated temperature has disabled the unlatching
4003 mechanism in accordance with listed fire door test procedures
4004
- 4005 7. Doors serving roofs not intended to be occupied shall be permitted to be locked
4006 preventing entry to the building from the roof.
4007

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 4008
4009
4010
4011
4012
4013
4014
4015
4016
4017
4018
4019
4020
4021
4022
4023
4024
4025
4026
4027
4028
4029
4030
4031
4032
4033
4034
4035
4036
4037
4038
4039
4040
8. Other than egress *courts*, where occupants must egress from an exterior space through the building for *means of egress*, exit access doors shall be permitted to be equipped with an approved locking device where installed and operated in accordance with all the following:
- 8.1. The maximum *occupant load* shall be posted where required by section 1004.9. Such signage shall be permanently affixed inside the building and shall be posted in a conspicuous space near all the exit access doorways.
- 8.2. A weatherproof telephone or two-way communication system installed in accordance with Sections 1009.8.1 and 1009.8.2 shall be located adjacent to not less than one required exit access door on the exterior side.
- 8.3. The egress door locking device is readily distinguishable as locked and shall be a key-operated locking device.
- 8.4. A clear window or glazed door opening, not less than 5 square feet (.46 m²) in area, shall be provided at each exit access door to determine if there are occupants using the outdoor area.
- 8.5. A readily visible, durable sign shall be posted on the interior side on or adjacent to each locked required exit access door serving the exterior area stating, “THIS DOOR TO REMAIN UNLOCKED WHEN THE OUTDOOR AREA IS OCCUPIED.” The letters on the sign shall be not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) high on a contrasting background.
9. Locking devices are permitted on doors to balconies, decks, or other exterior spaces serving individual dwelling or sleeping units.
10. Locking devices are permitted on doors to balconies, decks or other exterior spaces of 250 square feet (23.23 m²) or less serving a private office space.

Carryover COG Amendment

4041 **1010.2.5 Bolt locks.** Manually operated flush bolts or surface bolts are not permitted.

4042 **Exceptions:**

- 4043
- 4044 1. On doors not required for egress in individual *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*.
- 4045
- 4046 2. Where a pair of doors serves a storage or equipment room, manually operated
- 4047 edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf.
- 4048
- 4049 3. Where a pair of doors serves an *occupant load* of less than 50 persons in a
- 4050 Group B, F or S occupancy, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4051 are permitted on the inactive leaf. The inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs,
4052 *panic* bars or similar operating hardware.

4053
4054 4. Where a pair of doors serves a Group A, B, F, M or S occupancy, manually
4055 operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf
4056 provided such inactive leaf is not needed to meet egress capacity requirements
4057 and the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in
4058 accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. The inactive leaf shall not contain
4059 doorknobs, *panic* bars or similar operating hardware.

4060
4061 5. Where a pair of doors serves patient care rooms in Group I-2 occupancies, self-
4062 latching edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf
4063 provided that the inactive leaf is not needed to meet egress capacity
4064 requirements and the inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs, *panic* bars or
4065 similar operating hardware.”

4066
4067 **1010.2.6 Closet doors.** Closet doors that latch in the closed position shall be openable
4068 from inside the closet.

4069
4070 **1010.2.7- Stairway doors.** Interior *stairway* means of egress doors shall be openable
4071 from both sides without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

4072
4073 **Exceptions:**

4074
4075 1. *Stairway* discharge doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only
4076 be locked from the opposite side.

4077
4078 2. This section shall not apply to doors arranged in accordance with Section
4079 403.5.3.

4080
4081 3. *Stairway* exit doors are permitted to be locked from the side opposite the egress
4082 side, provided that they are openable from the egress side and capable of being
4083 unlocked simultaneously without unlatching upon a signal from the *fire*
4084 *command center*, if present, or a signal by emergency personnel from a single
4085 location inside the main entrance to the building.

4086
4087 4. *Stairway* exit doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only be
4088 locked from the opposite side in Group B, F, M and S occupancies where the
4089 only interior access to the tenant space is from a single *exit stairway* where
4090 permitted in Section 1006.3.4.

4091
4092 5. *Stairway exit* doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only be
4093 locked from the opposite side in Group R-2 occupancies where the only interior
4094 access to the *dwelling unit* is from a single *exit stairway* where permitted in
4095 Section 1006.3.4.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4096 **1010.2.8 Locking arrangements in education occupancies.** In Group E occupancies,
4097 Group B educational occupancies and Group I-4 occupancies, egress doors from
4098 classrooms, offices and other occupied rooms shall be permitted to be provided with
4099 locking arrangements designed to keep intruders from entering the room shall comply with
4100 all of the following conditions are met:

- 4101 1. The door shall be capable of being unlocked from outside the room with a key or
4102 other *approved* means.
- 4103 2. The door shall be openable from within the room in accordance with Section
4104 1010.2.
- 4105 3. Modifications shall not be made to listed *panic hardware*, fire door hardware or
4106 door closers.
- 4107 4. Modifications to *fire door assemblies* shall be in accordance with NFPA 80.
4108

4109 Remote locking or unlocking of doors from an approved location shall be permitted in
4110 addition to the unlocking operation in item 1.
4111

4112 **1010.2.9 Panic and fire exit hardware.** Swinging doors serving a Group H occupancy
4113 and doors serving rooms or spaces with an *occupant load* of 50 or more in a Group A or E
4114 occupancy shall not be provided with a latch or lock other than *panic hardware* or *fire exit*
4115 *hardware*.
4116

4117 **Exceptions:**

- 4118 1. A main exit of a Group A occupancy shall be permitted to be locking in accordance
4119 with Section 1010.2.4 Item 3.
4120
- 4121 2. Doors provided with *panic hardware* or *fire exit hardware* and serving a Group A
4122 or E occupancy shall be permitted to be electrically locked in accordance with
4123 Section 1010.2.11 or 1010.2.12.
4124
- 4125 3. Exit access doors serving occupied exterior areas shall be permitted to be locked in
4126 accordance with Section 1010.2.4, Item 8.
4127
- 4128 4. Courtrooms shall be permitted to be locked in accordance with Section 1010.2.13,
4129 Item 3.
4130

4131 **1010.2.9.1 Refrigeration machinery room.** Refrigeration machinery rooms larger
4132 than 1,000 square feet (93 m²) shall have not less than two exit or exit access doorways
4133 that swing in the direction of egress travel and shall be equipped with *panic hardware*
4134 *or fire exit hardware*.
4135

4136 **1010.2.9.2 Rooms with electrical equipment.** Exit or exit access doors serving
4137 transformer vaults, rooms designated for batteries or energy storage systems, or
4138 modular data centers shall be equipped with panic hardware or fire exit hardware.
4139

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4140 Rooms containing electrical equipment rated 800 amperes or more that contain
4141 overcurrent devices, switching, devices or control devices and where the exit or exit
4142 access door is less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from the equipment working space as
4143 required by NFPA 70, such doors shall not be provided with a latch or lock other than
4144 *panic hardware* or *fire exit hardware*. The doors shall swing in the direction of egress
4145 travel.

4146
4147 **1010.2.9.3 Installation.** Where *panic* or *fire exit hardware* is installed, it shall comply
4148 with the following:

- 4149 1. *Panic hardware* shall be listed in accordance with UL 305.
- 4150 2. *Fire exit hardware* shall be listed in accordance with UL 10C and UL 305.
- 4151 3. The actuating portion of the releasing device shall extend not less than one-half
4152 of the door leaf width.
- 4153 4. The maximum unlatching force shall not exceed 15 pounds (67 N).

4154
4155 **1010.2.9.4 Balanced doors.** If *balanced doors* are used and *panic hardware* is
4156 required, the *panic hardware* shall be the push-pad type and the pad shall not extend
4157 more than one-half the width of the door measured from the latch side.”

4158
4159 **1010.2.10 Monitored or recorded egress.** Where electrical systems that monitor or record
4160 egress activity are incorporated, the locking system shall comply with Section 1010.2.11,
4161 1010.2.12, 1010.2.13, 1010.2.14 or 1010.2.15 or shall be readily openable from the egress
4162 side without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

4163
4164 ~~**1010.2.11 Door hardware release of electrically locked egress doors.** Door hardware
4165 release of electric locking systems shall be permitted on doors in the *means of egress* in
4166 any occupancy except Group H where installed and operated in accordance with all of the
4167 following:~~

- 4168 1. ~~The door hardware that is affixed to the door leaf has an obvious method of operation
4169 that is readily operated under all lighting conditions.~~
 - 4170 2. ~~The door hardware is capable of being operated with one hand and shall comply
4171 with Section 1010.2.1.~~
 - 4172 3. ~~Operation of the door hardware directly interrupts the power to the electric lock and
4173 unlocks the door immediately.~~
 - 4174 4. ~~Loss of power to the electric locking system automatically unlocks the door.~~
- 4175
4176
4177
4178
4179
4180
4181
4182

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4183 ~~5. Where *panic or fire exit hardware* is required by Section 1010.2.9, operation of~~
4184 ~~*panic or fire exit hardware* also releases the electric lock.~~
4185

4186 ~~6. The locking system units shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 294.~~
4187

4188 **1010.2.11 Door hardware release of electrically locked egress doors.** Doors in all
4189 occupancies are permitted to be equipped with approved, listed electronic locks which must
4190 be installed in accordance with this section if the building is protected throughout with an
4191 *automatic sprinkler system*, a fire alarm system, a smoke detection system or with UL 268
4192 *smoke detectors installed on each interior side of all doors provided with electronic locks.*
4193 The locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.
4194

4195 **Exception:** Electronic strikes or electronic mortise locks that do not impede egress are
4196 not subject to these requirements.
4197

4198 **1010.2.11.1 Ability to exit.** Regardless of the location of the device or the level of
4199 security desired, the ability to exit at the option of the individual, not the controlling
4200 authority, must always be provided.
4201

Exceptions:

- 4202
4203
- 4204 1. Locations for occupants needing self-protection because of reduced mental
4205 capacities such as mental or Alzheimer care hospitals may have release
4206 mechanisms as further specified in Section 1010.2.11.4
4207
 - 4208 2. Locations where national security interests are present with approval of the
4209 building official.
4210
 - 4211 3. Modified arrangements may be made for nursery and obstetric areas,
4212 assisted living facilities and other similar facilities with approval of the
4213 building official.
4214

4215 (Note: For interior locations such as elevator lobbies, access includes
4216 passage into and through the tenant space being secured to provide access to the
4217 stairway. If access through the secured area is not desired, another exiting
4218 method such as providing a public corridor to the stairway should be utilized.)
4219

4220 **1010.2.11.2 General.** Electronic locking devices installed in such a manner that the
4221 method of unrestricted exiting relies upon electricity or electronics instead of
4222 mechanical means shall comply with the provisions set forth in this section. General
4223 guidelines for such installation are as follows:
4224

- 4225 1. Entrance doors in buildings with an occupancy in Group A, B, E or M shall not
4226 be secured from the egress side during periods that the building is open to the
4227 general public.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4228 2. Access to exits, even in non-fire situations, shall be available to all individuals,
4229 even those individuals that are considered as unauthorized. Manually activated
4230 release mechanisms shall be made available. For specific provisions and
4231 exceptions, see Section 1010.2.11.4
4232

4233 3. For emergency situations, buildings shall be provided with an automatic release
4234 mechanism as specified in Section 1010.2.11.5.
4235

4236 4. Once released, the door shall swing freely as a push/pull door. For specific
4237 provisions and exceptions, see Section 1010.2.11.6.
4238

4239 5. Request to exit buttons, break glass boxes and emergency pull boxes, with their
4240 required signs, shall be installed in accordance with Sections 1010.11.2.4 and
4241 1010.11.2.7.
4242

4243 6. All devices used in a fire rated/fire door situation shall be approved for such
4244 use.
4245

4246 **1010.2.11.3 Permits and inspections.** A separate permit is required to install
4247 electronic security devices. Permits will be issued as SE permits and the fee will be
4248 based on the value of the work. Delayed egress locks meeting the criteria set forth in
4249 Section 1010.11.2.7 will not require separate permits. Electronic security devices shall
4250 be approved by the *building official* and shall be functionally tested by the fire marshal.
4251

4252 **1010.2.11.4 Access to exits/manual release mechanisms.** Passage through the
4253 secured door shall be provided.
4254

4255 (Note: Under usual circumstances, passage by individuals on the inside, going to
4256 the outside, is made available. Controls are usually installed to prevent unauthorized
4257 entry. Examples of such installations are the lobby entrance doors where exiting is by
4258 pushing the exit button.)
4259

4260 Normal passage shall be provided with the use of an approved button installed in
4261 accordance with Section 1010.11.2.7.
4262

4263 Other acceptable normal release methods for all other occupancies may include
4264 options as follows:
4265

4266 1. Pushing on or making contact with an approved electronic release bar. Such
4267 bars shall be installed such that they will fail in the released position should the
4268 electrical connection with the bar be lost.
4269

4270 2. Where panic or fire exit hardware is required by Section 1010.2.9, operation of
4271 the listed panic or fire exit hardware also releases the electromagnetic lock.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4272 3. Use of an approved motion detector. Upon detection of an approach, the device
4273 will unlatch. When using a motion detector, a release button in accordance with
4274 Section 1010.11.2.7 is still required to be installed in case of failure or
4275 inaccurate detection of the motion device.
4276

4277 When access to the exits requires passage through the device, manual release
4278 mechanisms shall be made available.
4279

4280 (Note: Examples of such installations that shall provide a manual override
4281 method are as follows:
4282

4283 1. Elevator lobbies on full floor tenants. Access to the exit stairs is controlled
4284 and the exit path is through the device and tenant space. To permit access
4285 to the stairs, a manual override system shall be installed.
4286

4287 2. Warehouses/factories where employees are required to enter and exit
4288 through one point. Use of other building exits are undesired and controlled.
4289 A manual override system shall still be installed at the controlled exits.
4290

4291 3. Secured systems where employee ingress/egress is monitored at all secured
4292 doors. A manual override system shall still be installed at each door.
4293

4294 4. Occupancies like jewelry stores where the desire is to buzz entry and exit.
4295 Buzzing entry is acceptable. Buzzing exit may be used but a manual
4296 override system shall still be installed at the door.)
4297

4298 When passage of individuals is undesired, unless other approved exits are
4299 available, access at the option of the individual shall be provided. Acceptable
4300 release methods may include options as follows:
4301

4302 1. An emergency pull box or a break glass emergency box may be located
4303 adjacent to the door to activate the release in an emergency. Choice of box
4304 shall be approved by the fire chief so as not to be confused with any other
4305 alarm boxes. An approved sign shall be adjacent to the box with the
4306 appropriate message such as “Pull to Open Door” or “Break Glass to Open
4307 Door.”
4308

4309 2. When approved by the building official, a release button will not be required
4310 for buildings provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system
4311 throughout with monitored 24-hour security personnel on site, if a means
4312 for two-way communication with security such as intercom or telephone is
4313 provided in an approved location. Controls shall be provided at the security
4314 station for unlatching the electronic device. The two-way communication

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4315 system shall be wired through a supervised circuit as defined in the *Dallas*
4316 *Fire Code.*
4317

4318 3. In I Occupancies provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system
4319 throughout, the release button will not be required provided a control for
4320 releasing the device is provided at a nurse station and a deactivation method,
4321 e.g. a keyed control, a control pad or card reader, is provided at the door and
4322 staff is supplied with the appropriate tool or knowledge to operate the
4323 release mechanism.
4324

4325 **1010.2.11.5 Automatic release mechanisms.** Electronic locking devices shall have
4326 automatic releasing that complies with the following:
4327

4328 1. Automatically release upon activation of the smoke detection or fire alarm
4329 system, if provided. The control devices shall remain unlocked until the system
4330 has been reset.
4331

4332 2. When the area of concern has a sprinkler system, automatically release upon
4333 activation of a waterflow alarm or trouble signal. The control devices shall
4334 remain unlocked until the system is reset.
4335

4336 3. Automatically release upon loss of electrical power to the building or to the
4337 electronic device. Locking mechanisms shall not be provided with emergency
4338 backup power such as generators or batteries.
4339

4340 4. Automatically release upon activation of a manual release mechanism as
4341 specified in Section 1010.11.2.4 and as further specified in Section 1010.11.2.7.
4342

4343 Manually resetting the devices is not required. Automatically resetting the devices
4344 may be done by zone.
4345

4346 **1010.2.11.5.1 Zone control.** Deactivation of the device(s) may be zone controlled
4347 as follows:
4348

4349 1. All devices on the same floor as the source of activation in fully sprinklered
4350 buildings.
4351

4352 2. All devices on the same floor as the source of activation of the smoke
4353 detection system plus one floor below and all floors above in unsprinklered
4354 buildings.
4355

4356 (Note: When security is still desired after the automatic release of the
4357 system, or when positive latching is necessary for fire door installation, it is still
4358 possible to maintain security provided the appropriate combination of devices
4359 is installed. As an example, use of panic hardware or doorknobs that provide

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4360 mechanical exiting at all times, but do not function from the exterior unless
4361 electronically activated, will still provide a secured door. It will provide the
4362 required manual exiting but entry by card or code is not available until the
4363 system resets.
4364

4365 No such provision of restricting entry can be used when passage through
4366 the device is necessary for access to the exit. As an example, when the elevator
4367 lobby is secured from the exit stairs by a full floor tenant, upon automatic
4368 activation those devices shall release and access be provided through the tenant
4369 space to the stairs. A manual locking system cannot be installed to insure
4370 security.)
4371

4372 **1010.2.11.6 Door swing freely/single exit motion.** Doors shall swing freely when the
4373 device is released.
4374

4375 (Note: It is required that the exit motion require only one activity. With normal
4376 doors, one activity is pushing the mechanical panic bar or turning the mechanical
4377 doorknob. With an electronic device, one motion is pushing the button; therefore,
4378 pushing the button and pushing a panic bar or turning a doorknob would be two
4379 activities. An acceptable alternative is to use a motion detector (push button is still
4380 required). The motion detector will release the device upon approach and turning the
4381 doorknob is now just one activity. The push button is only necessary should the motion
4382 device fail. Another option is to use an electronic panic bar. One motion, pushing the
4383 bar, is for exiting but entry is controlled. Or, use of an electronic doorknob where
4384 exiting is always mechanical but the entry side does not engage without electronic
4385 activation.)
4386

4387 **Exception:** When doors are required to have positive latching, the building official
4388 and fire chief shall determine:
4389

- 4390 1. if a double motion to exit, i.e. the release of the electronic device then the
4391 operation of a door knob or push bar, is an acceptable exit means; or
4392
4393 2. if the latch should be designed to fail in the secure position; or
4394
4395 3. whether to deny the usage of the locks.
4396

4397 **1010.2.11.7 Request to exit buttons/break glass boxes/emergency pull boxes.** Exit
4398 buttons, break glass boxes and emergency pull boxes shall be installed as follows:
4399

- 4400 1. **Button.** The release button shall be red in color and at least a 2-inch mushroom
4401 switch or two-inch square lexan palm button.
4402
4403 2. **Location.** The button, break glass box or emergency pull box shall be located
4404 40 inches (1016 mm) to 48 inches (1219 mm) vertically above the floor and

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4405 within five feet (1524 mm) of the secured doors. Ready access shall be provided
4406 to the manual unlocking device.
4407

4408 3. **Sign.** An approved sign shall be adjacent to the button, break glass box or
4409 emergency pull box with the words “Push to Exit” or “Pull to Exit” as
4410 applicable. Sign lettering shall be white on a red background and at least one
4411 inch (25 mm) in height and shall have a stroke of not less than $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (3.2
4412 mm).
4413

4414 4. **Activation.** When operated, the manual unlocking device shall result in direct
4415 interruption of power to the device, independent of the access control system
4416 electronics, and the device shall remain unlocked for a minimum of 30 seconds.
4417 It shall not be required that the release mechanism be constantly held, such as
4418 holding down the button, to get out.
4419

4420 (Note: When buzzing someone out, holding down the button is acceptable;
4421 however, the manual release device installed at the door, even those required in
4422 the occupancy using buzzing, shall not require constant holding down to exit.)
4423

4424 5. **Time delay.** Exit devices in accordance with this section shall not possess a
4425 time delay option.
4426
4427

4428 **1010.2.12 Sensor release of electrically locked egress doors.** Sensor release of electric
4429 locking systems shall be permitted on doors located in the *means of egress* in any
4430 occupancy except Group H where installed and operated in accordance with all of the
4431 following criteria:

4432
4433 7. The sensor shall be installed on the egress side, arranged to detect an occupant
4434 approaching the doors and shall cause the electric locking system to unlock.
4435

4436 8. The electric locks shall be arranged to unlock by a signal from or loss of power to
4437 the sensor.
4438

4439 3. Loss of power to the lock or locking system shall automatically unlock the electric
4440 locks.
4441

4442 4. The doors shall be arranged to unlock from a manual unlocking device located 40
4443 inches to 48 inches (1016 mm to 1219 mm) vertically above the floor and within 5
4444 feet (1524 mm) of the secured doors. Ready access shall be provided to the manual
4445 unlocking device and the device shall be clearly identified by a sign that reads “PUSH
4446 TO EXIT.” When operated, the manual unlocking device shall result in direct
4447 interruption of power to the lock—independent of other electronics—and the electric
4448 lock shall remain unlocked for not less than 30 seconds.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 4449 5. Activation of the building *fire alarm system*, where provided, shall automatically
4450 unlock the electric lock, and the electric lock shall remain unlocked until the fire
4451 alarm system has been reset.
4452
- 4453 6. Activation of the building *automatic sprinkler system* or *fire detection system*, where
4454 provided, shall automatically unlock the electric lock. The electric lock shall remain
4455 unlocked until the *fire alarm system* has been reset.
4456
- 4457 7. Emergency lighting shall be provided on the egress side of the door.
4458
- 4459 8. The door locking system units shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 294.
4460

4461 **1010.2.13 Delayed egress.** Delayed egress locking systems shall be permitted to be
4462 installed on doors serving the following occupancies in buildings that are equipped
4463 throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or an
4464 *approved automatic smoke* or *heat detection system* installed in accordance with Section
4465 907.
4466

- 4467 1. Group B, F, I, M, R, S and U occupancies.
4468
- 4469 2. Group E classroom with an occupant load of less than 50
4470
- 4471 3. In courtrooms in Group A-3 and B occupancies, delayed egress locking systems
4472 shall be permitted to be installed on exit or *exit access* door, in buildings that are
4473 equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section
4474 903.3.1.1.
4475

4476 **1010.2.13.1 Delayed egress locking system.** The delayed egress locking system
4477 shall be installed and operated in accordance with all of the following:
4478

- 4479 1. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate
4480 upon actuation of the *automatic sprinkler system* or *automatic fire detection*
4481 *system*, allowing immediate, free egress.
4482
- 4483 2. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate
4484 upon loss of power controlling the lock or lock mechanism, allowing
4485 immediate free egress.
4486
- 4487 3. The delayed egress locking system shall have the capability of being
4488 deactivated at the *fire command center* and other *approved* locations.
4489
- 4490 4. An attempt to egress shall initiate an irreversible process that shall allow
4491 such egress in not more than 15 seconds when a physical effort to exit is
4492 applied to the egress side door hardware for not more than 3 seconds.
4493 Initiation of the irreversible process shall activate an audible signal in the

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4494 vicinity of the door. Once the delay electronics have been deactivated,
4495 rearming the delay electronics shall be by manual means only.

4496
4497 **Exception:** Where *approved*, a delay of not more than 30 seconds is
4498 permitted on a delayed egress door.

4499
4500 5. The egress path from any point shall not pass through more than one delayed egress
4501 locking system.

4502
4503 **Exceptions:**

4504 1. In Group I-1, Condition 2, Group I-2 or I-3 occupancies, the egress path
4505 from any point in the building shall pass through not more than two
4506 delayed egress locking systems provided the combined delay does not
4507 exceed 30 seconds.

4508
4509 2. In Group I-1 Condition 1 or Group I-4 occupancies, the egress path from
4510 any point in the building shall pass through not more than two delayed
4511 egress locking systems provided the combined delay does not exceed 30
4512 seconds and the building is equipped throughout with *automatic*
4513 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

4514
4515 6. A sign shall be provided on the door and shall be located above and within 12 inches
4516 (305 mm) of the door exit hardware:

4517
4518 6.1. For doors that swing in the direction of egress, the sign shall read: PUSH
4519 UNTIL ALARM SOUNDS. DOOR CAN BE OPENED IN 15 [30]
4520 SECONDS.

4521
4522 6.2. For doors that swing in the opposite direction of egress, the sign shall read:
4523 PULL UNTIL ALARM SOUNDS. DOOR CAN BE OPENED IN 15 [30]
4524 SECONDS.

4525
4526 6.3. The sign shall comply with the visual character requirements in ICC A117.1.

4527
4528 **Exception:** Where approved, in Group I occupancies, the installation of a sign
4529 is not required where care recipients who because of clinical needs require
4530 restraint or containment as part of the function of the treatment area.

4531
4532 7. Emergency lighting shall be provided on the egress side of the door.

4533
4534 8. The delayed egress locking system units shall be *listed* in accordance with UL 294.

4535
4536 **1010.2.14 Controlled egress doors in Groups I-1 and I-2.** Electric locking systems,
4537 including electromechanical locking systems and electromagnetic locking systems, shall
4538 be permitted to be locked in the means of egress in Group I-1 or I-2 occupancies where the

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4539 clinical needs of persons receiving care require their containment. Controlled egress doors
4540 shall be permitted in such occupancies where the building is equipped throughout with an
4541 *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or an *approved automatic*
4542 *smoke detection system* installed in accordance with Section 907, provided that the doors
4543 are installed and operate in accordance with all of the following:
4544

- 4545 1. The door locks shall unlock on actuation of the *automatic sprinkler system* or
4546 *automatic smoke detection system*.
- 4547
- 4548 2. The door locks shall unlock on loss of power controlling the lock or lock mechanism.
4549
- 4550 3. The door locking system shall be installed to have the capability of being unlocked
4551 by a switch located at the *fire command center*, a nursing station or other *approved*
4552 location. The switch shall directly break power to the lock.
4553
- 4554 4. A building occupant shall not be required to pass through more than one door
4555 equipped with a controlled egress locking system before entering an *exit*.
4556
- 4557 5. The procedures for unlocking the doors shall be described and approved as part of
4558 the emergency planning and preparedness required by Chapter 4 of the *Dallas*
4559 [*International*] *Fire Code*.
4560
- 4561 6. All clinical staff shall have the keys, codes or other means necessary to operate the
4562 locking systems.
- 4563
- 4564 7. Emergency lighting shall be provided at the door.
4565
- 4566 8. The door locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

4567 **Exceptions:**

- 4570 1. Items 1 through 4 shall not apply to doors to areas occupied by persons who,
4571 because of clinical needs, require restraint or containment as part of the function
4572 of a psychiatric or cognitive treatment area.
4573
- 4574 2. Items 1 through 4 shall not apply to doors to areas where a *listed* egress control
4575 system is utilized to reduce the risk of child abduction from nursery and obstetric
4576 areas of a Group I-2 *hospital*.
4577

4578 **1010.2.15 Locking arrangements in buildings within correctional facilities.** In
4579 *buildings* within correctional and detention facilities, doors in *means of egress* serving
4580 rooms or spaces occupied by persons whose movements are controlled for security reasons
4581 shall be permitted to be locked where equipped with egress control devices that shall unlock
4582 manually and by not less than one of the following means:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 4583 1. Activation of an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section
4584 903.3.1.1.
4585
4586 2. Activation of an *approved manual fire alarm box*.
4587
4588 3. A signal from a *constantly attended location*.
4589

4590 **1010.3 Special doors.** Special doors and security grilles shall comply with the requirements
4591 of Sections 1010.3.1 through 1010.3.4
4592

4593 **1010.3.1 Revolving doors.** Revolving doors shall comply with the following:
4594

- 4595 1. Revolving doors shall comply with the BHMA A156.27 and shall be installed in
4596 accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
4597
4598 2. Each revolving door shall be capable of *breakout* in accordance with BHMA
4599 A156.27 and shall provide an aggregate width of not less than 36 inches (914 mm).
4600
4601 3. A revolving door shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the foot or top
4602 of *stairways* or escalators. A dispersal area shall be provided between the *stairways*
4603 or escalators and the revolving doors.
4604
4605 4. The revolutions per minute (rpm) for a revolving door shall not exceed the
4606 maximum rpm as specified in BHMA A156.27. Manual revolving doors shall
4607 comply with Table 1010.3.1(1). Automatic or *power-operated* revolving doors
4608 shall comply with Table 1010.3.2(2).
4609
4610 5. An emergency stop switch shall be provided near each entry point of a revolving
4611 door within 48 inches (1220 mm) of the door and between 34 inches (864 mm) and
4612 48 inches (1220 mm) above the floor. The activation area of the emergency stop
4613 switch button shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter and shall be red.
4614
4615 6. Each revolving door shall have a side-hinged swinging door which complies with
4616 Section 1010.1 in the same wall and within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the revolving
4617 door.
4618
4619 7. Revolving doors shall not be part of an *accessible route* required by Section 1009
4620 and Chapter 11.
4621

4622 **1010.3.1.1 Egress component.** A revolving door used as a component of a *means of*
4623 *egress* shall comply with Section 1010.3.1 and the following three conditions:
4624

- 4625 1. Revolving doors shall not be given credit for more than 50 percent of the
4626 minimum width or required capacity.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 4627 2. Each revolving door shall be credited with a capacity based on not more than
4628 50-person *occupant load*.
4629
4630 3. Each revolving door shall provide for egress in accordance with BHMA
4631 A156.27 with a *breakout* force of not more than 130 pounds (578 N).
4632

4633 **1010.3.1.2 Other than egress component.** A revolving door used as other than a
4634 component of a *means of egress* shall comply with Section 1010.3.1. The *breakout*
4635 force of a revolving door not used as a component of a *means of egress* shall not be
4636 more than 180 pounds (801 N).
4637

4638 **Exception:** A *breakout* force in excess of 180 pounds (801 N) is permitted if the
4639 *breakout* force is reduced to not more than 130 pounds (578 N) when not less than
4640 one of the following conditions is satisfied:
4641

- 4642 1. There is a power failure or power is removed to the device holding the door
4643 wings in position.
4644
4645 2. There is an actuation of the *automatic sprinkler system* where such system
4646 is provided.
4647
4648 3. There is an actuation of a smoke detection system that is installed in
4649 accordance with Section 907 to provide coverage in areas within the
4650 building that are within 75 feet (22 860 mm) of the revolving doors.
4651
4652 4. There is an actuation of a manual control switch, in an *approved* location
4653 and clearly identified, that reduces the *breakout* force to not more than 130
4654 pounds (578 N).
4655

4656 **1010.3.2 Power-operated doors.** Where *means of egress* doors are operated or assisted
4657 by power, the design shall be such that in the event of power failure, the door is capable of
4658 being opened manually to permit *means of egress* travel or closed where necessary to
4659 safeguard *means of egress*. The forces required to open these doors manually shall not
4660 exceed those specified in Section 1010.1.3, except that the force to set the door in motion
4661 shall not exceed 50 pounds (220 N). The door shall be capable of opening from any
4662 position to the full width of the opening in which such door is installed when a force is
4663 applied to the door on the side from which egress is made. *Power-operated* swinging doors,
4664 *power-operated* sliding doors and *power-operated* folding doors shall comply with BHMA
4665 A156.10. *Power-assisted* swinging doors and low-energy power-operated swinging doors
4666 shall comply with BHMA A156.19. Low-energy *power-operated* sliding doors and low-
4667 energy *power-operated* folding doors shall comply with BHMA A156.38.
4668

Exceptions:

- 4669 1. Occupancies in Group I-3.
4670

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 4671
4672
4673
4674
4675
4676
4677
4678
4679
2. Special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding doors complying with Section 1010 .3.3.
 3. For a biparting door in the emergency *breakout* mode, a door leaf located within a multiple-leaf opening shall be exempt from the minimum 32-inch (813 mm) single-leaf requirements of Section 1010.1.1, provided a minimum 32-inch (813 mm) clear opening is provided when the two biparting leaves meeting in the center are broken out.

4680
4681
4682
4683
4684

1010.3.3 Special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding doors. In other than Group H occupancies, horizontal sliding doors permitted to be a component of a *means of egress* in accordance with Exception 6 to Section 1010.1.2 shall comply with all of the following criteria:

- 4685
4686
4687
4688
4689
4690
4691
4692
4693
4694
4695
4696
4697
4698
4699
4700
4701
4702
4703
4704
4705
4706
4707
4708
4709
4710
1. The doors shall be power operated and shall be capable of being operated manually in the event of power failure.
 2. The doors shall be openable by a simple method without special knowledge or effort from egress side or sides.
 3. The force required to operate the door shall not exceed 30 pounds (133 N) to set the door in motion and 15 pounds (67 N) to close the door or open it to the minimum required width.
 4. The door shall be openable with a force not to exceed 15 pounds (67 N) when a force of 250 pounds (1100 N) is applied perpendicular to the door adjacent to the operating device.
 5. The door assembly shall comply with the applicable *fire protection rating* and, where rated, shall be self-closing or automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6, shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 80 and shall comply with Section 716.
 6. The door assembly shall have an integrated standby power supply.
 7. The door assembly power supply shall be electrically supervised.
 8. The door shall open to the minimum required width within 10 seconds after activation of the operating device.

4711
4712
4713
4714
4715

1010.3.4 Security grilles. In Groups B, F, M and S, horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles are permitted at the main *exit* and shall be openable from the inside without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort during periods that the space is occupied. The grilles shall remain secured in the full-open position during the period of occupancy by the general public. Where two or more exits or access to exits are required, not more than one-

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4716 half of the *exits* or *exit access doorways* shall be equipped with horizontal sliding or vertical
4717 grilles.

4718

4719 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

4720 **98. Paragraph 1011.5.2, “Riser Height and Tread Depth,” of Subsection 1011.5,**

4721 **“Stair Treads and Risers,” of Section 1011, “Stairways,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,”**

4722 **of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

4723 **“1011.5.2 Riser height and tread depth.** *Stair* riser heights shall be 7 inches (178 mm)
4724 maximum and 4 inches (102 mm) minimum. The riser height shall be measured vertically
4725 between the *nosings* of adjacent treads or between *stairway* landing and the adjacent tread.
4726 Rectangular tread depths shall be 11 inches (279 mm) minimum measured horizontally
4727 between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads and at a right angle to
4728 the tread’s *nosing*. *Winder* treads shall have a minimum tread depth of 11 inches (279 mm)
4729 between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads at the intersections
4730 with the walkline and a minimum tread depth of 10 inches (254 mm) within the clear width of
4731 the *stair*.

4732

4733 **Exceptions:**

4734

- 4735 1. *Spiral stairways* in accordance with Section 1011.10.
- 4736 2. *Stairways* connecting stepped *aisles* to cross *aisles* or concourses shall be permitted
4737 to use the riser/tread dimension in Section 1030.14.2.
- 4738 3. In Group R-3 occupancies; within *dwelling units* in Group R-2 occupancies; and in
4739 Group U occupancies that are accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy or accessory to
4740 individual *dwelling units* in Group R-2 occupancies; the maximum riser height shall
4741 be 7³/₄ inches (197 mm); the minimum tread depth shall be 10 inches (254 mm);
4742 the minimum *winder* tread depth at the walkline shall be 10 inches (254 mm); and
4743 the minimum *winder* tread depth shall be 6 inches (152 mm). A *nosing* projection
4744 not less than 3/4 inch (19.1 mm) but not more than 1¹/₄ inches (32 mm) shall be
4745 provided on *stairways* with solid risers where the tread depth is less than 11 inches
4746 (279 mm).
- 4747 4. See Section 503.1 of the *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Existing Building Code* for the
4748 replacement of existing *stairways*.
- 4749 5. In Group I-3 facilities, *stairways* providing access to guard towers, observation
4750 stations and control rooms, not more than 250 square feet (23 m²) in area, shall be
4751 permitted to have a maximum riser height of 8 inches (203 mm) and a minimum
4752 tread depth of 9 inches (229 mm).

4756

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4757 6. Private curved stairways used as convenience stairways may be provided with a
4758 minimum width of run of not less than 10 inches (254 mm) measured 6 inches
4759 (152.4 mm) from the interior radius and a maximum width of run of not more than
4760 18 inches (457.2 mm) measured 6 inches (152.4 mm) from the exterior radius.”
4761

4762 Carryover Dallas Amendment

4763 99. Subsection 1011.9, “Curved Stairways,” of Section 1011, “Stairways,” of
4764 Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read
4765 as follows:

4766 “1011.9 Curved stairways. Curved stairways with winder treads shall have treads and risers in
4767 accordance with Section 1011.5 and the smallest radius shall be not less than twice the minimum
4768 width or required capacity of the stairway.

4769 Exceptions:

- 4770
- 4771 1. The radius restriction shall not apply to curved stairways in Group R-3 and within
4772 individual dwelling units in Group R-2.
 - 4773 2. Private curved stairways may be used as convenience stairways, provided the width of
4774 the stairway is not less than 44 inches (1711.6 mm) with the interior radius not less
4775 than 44 inches (1711.6 mm). In all cases the stairway must comply with Chapter 6 and
4776 the structural provisions of this code.”
4777
4778
4779

4780 Carryover Dallas Amendment

4781 100. Subsection 1012.1, “Scope,” of Section 1012, “Ramps,” of Chapter 10, “Means
4782 of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

4783 “1012.1 Scope. The provisions of this section shall apply to ramps used as a component of a
4784 means of egress.

4785 Exceptions:

- 4786
- 4787 1. Ramped aisles within assembly rooms or spaces shall comply with the provisions in
4788 Section 1030.
 - 4789 2. Curb ramps shall comply with ICC A117.1 or with Section 1101.2.
4790
 - 4791 3. Vehicle ramps in parking garages for pedestrian exit access shall not be required to
4792 comply with Sections 1012.3 through 1012.10 where they are not an accessible route
4793 serving accessible parking spaces, other required accessible elements or part of an
4794 accessible means of egress.”
4795
4796

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4797 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

4798 **101. Subsection 1013.5, “Internally Illuminated Exit Signs,” of Section 1013, “Exit**
4799 **Signs,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
4800 **amended to read as follows:**

4801 **“1013.5 Internally illuminated exit signs.** Electrically powered, *self-luminous* and
4802 *photoluminescent* exit signs shall be *listed* and *labeled* in accordance with UL 924 and shall be
4803 installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions and Chapter 27. Exit signs shall be
4804 illuminated at all times. *Photoluminescent exit signs require plans and documents demonstrating*
4805 *a sufficient source of activation in any given 24-hour period.*”

4806
4807
4808 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

4809 **102. Subsection 1016.2, “Egress Through Intervening Spaces,” of Section 1016,**
4810 **“Exit Access,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
4811 **amended to read as follows:**

4812 **“1016.2 Egress through intervening spaces.** Egress through intervening spaces shall comply
4813 with this section.

4814
4815 1. *Exit access* through an enclosed elevator lobby is permitted. Where access to two or more
4816 exits or exit access doorways is required in Section 1006.2.1, access to not less than one of
4817 the required *exits* shall be provided without travel through the enclosed elevator lobbies
4818 required by Section 3006. Where the path of *exit access* travel passes through an enclosed
4819 elevator lobby, the level of protection required for the enclosed elevator lobby is not
4820 required to be extended to the *exit* unless direct access to an *exit* is required by other
4821 sections of this code.

4822
4823 2. Egress from a room or space shall not pass through adjoining or intervening rooms or areas,
4824 except where such adjoining rooms or areas and the area served are accessory to one or the
4825 other, are not a Group H occupancy and provide a discernible path of egress travel to an
4826 *exit*.

4827
4828 **Exception:** *Means of egress* are not prohibited through adjoining or intervening rooms
4829 or spaces in a Group H, S or F occupancy where the adjoining or intervening rooms
4830 or spaces are the same or a lesser hazard occupancy group.

4831
4832 3. An *exit access* shall not pass through a room that can be locked to prevent egress.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 4833 4. *Means of egress* from *dwelling units* or sleeping areas shall not lead through other sleeping
4834 areas, toilet rooms or bathrooms.
4835
- 4836 5. Egress shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, closets or spaces used for similar
4837 purposes.
4838

4839 **Exceptions:**

- 4840
- 4841 1. *Means of egress* are not prohibited through a kitchen area serving adjoining rooms
4842 constituting part of the same *dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit*.
4843
- 4844 2. *Means of egress* are not prohibited through stockrooms in Group M
4845 occupancies where all of the following are met:
4846
- 4847 2.1. The stock is of the same hazard classification as that found in the main retail
4848 area.
4849
- 4850 2.2. Not more than 50 percent of the *exit access* is through the stockroom.
4851
- 4852 2.3. The stockroom is not subject to locking from the egress side.
4853
- 4854 2.4. There is a demarcated, minimum 44-inch-wide (1118 mm) *aisle* defined by
4855 full- or partial-height fixed walls or similar construction that will maintain
4856 the required width and lead directly from the retail area to the *exit* without
4857 obstructions.
4858
- 4859 3. In a building protected throughout by an *approved automatic sprinkler system*, one
4860 *exit* may pass through a kitchen or storeroom provided:
4861
- 4862 3.1. The *exit* door must be visible upon entering the kitchen or storeroom and
4863 must be clearly marked and identifiable as an *exit*; and
4864
- 4865 3.2. The required *exit* width through the kitchen or storeroom must be
4866 permanently marked and must be maintained clear and unobstructed.
4867

4868 **1016.2.1 Multiple tenants.** Where more than one tenant occupies any one floor of a
4869 building or structure, each tenant space, *dwelling unit* and *sleeping unit* shall be provided
4870 with access to the required *exits* without passing through adjacent tenant spaces, *dwelling*
4871 *units* and *sleeping units*.
4872

4873 **Exception:** The *means of egress* from a smaller tenant space shall not be prohibited
4874 from passing through a larger adjoining tenant space where such rooms or spaces of the
4875 smaller tenant occupy less than 10 percent of the area of the larger tenant space through
4876 which they pass; are the same or similar occupancy group; a discernible path of egress
4877 travel to an exit is provided; and the *means of egress* into the adjoining space is not

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

subject to locking from the egress side. A required means of egress serving the larger tenant space shall not pass through the smaller tenant space or spaces.”

Carryover Dallas Amendment

103. Table 1017.2, “Exit Access Travel Distance,” of Subsection 1017.2, “Limitations,” of Section 1017, “Exit Access Travel Distance,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

**“TABLE 1017.2
EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE^a”**

OCCUPANCY	WITHOUT SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)	WITH SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)
A, E, [F-1], M, R[S-1]	200 ^c	250 ^b
I-1	Not Permitted	250 ^b
<u>B, F-1, S-1</u>	200	300 ^c
F-2, S-2, U	300	400 ^c
H-1	Not Permitted	75 ^d
H-2	Not Permitted	100 ^d
H-3	Not Permitted	150 ^d
H-4	Not Permitted	175 ^d
H-5	Not Permitted	200 ^c
I-2, I-3	Not Permitted	200 ^c
I-4	150	200 ^c

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. See the following sections for modifications to *exit access* travel distance requirements:
 - Section 402.8: For the distance limitation in malls.
 - Section 407.4: For the distance limitation in Group I-2.
 - Sections 408.6.1 and 408.8.1: For the distance limitations in Group I-3.
 - Section 411.2: For the distance limitation in special amusement buildings.
 - Section 412.6: For the distance limitations in aircraft manufacturing facilities.
 - Section 1006.2.2.2: For the distance limitation in refrigeration machinery rooms.
 - Section 1006.2.2.3: For the distance limitation in refrigerated rooms and spaces.
 - Section 1006.3.4: For buildings with one exit.
 - Section 1017.2.2: For increased distance limitation in Groups F-1 and S-1.
 - Section 1030.7: For increased limitation in assembly seating.
 - Section 3103.4: For temporary structures.
 - Section 3104.9: For pedestrian walkways.
- b. Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. See Section 903 for occupancies where *automatic sprinkler systems* are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.
- c. Buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
- d. Group H occupancies equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.2.5.1.
- e. Group R-3 and R-4 buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 See Section 903.2.8 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4912 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4913 **104. Subsection 1020.2, “Construction,” of Section 1020, “Corridors,” of Chapter**
4914 **10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as**
4915 **follows:**

4916 **“1020.2 Construction.** *Corridors* shall be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Table 1020.2.1.
4917 The *corridor* walls required to be fire-resistance rated shall comply with Section 708 for *fire*
4918 *partitions*.

4919
4920 **Exceptions:**

- 4921
- 4922 1. *A fire-resistance rating* is not required for *corridors* in an occupancy in Group E where
4923 each room that is used for instruction has not less than one door opening directly to the
4924 exterior and rooms for assembly purposes have not less than one-half of the required
4925 *means of egress* doors opening directly to the exterior. Exterior doors specified in this
4926 exception are required to be at ground level.
 - 4927
 - 4928 2. *A fire-resistance rating* is not required for *corridors* contained within a *dwelling unit*
4929 or *sleeping unit* in an occupancy in Groups I-1 and R.
 - 4930
 - 4931 3. *A fire-resistance rating* is not required for *corridors* in *open parking garages*.
 - 4932
 - 4933 4. *A fire-resistance rating* is not required for *corridors* in an occupancy in Group B that
4934 is a space requiring only a single *means of egress* complying with Section 1006.2.
 - 4935
 - 4936 5. *Corridors* adjacent to the *exterior walls* of buildings shall be permitted to have
4937 unprotected openings on unrated *exterior walls* where unrated walls are permitted by
4938 Table 705.5 and unprotected openings are permitted by Table 705.8.
 - 4939
 - 4940 6. *Corridor walls and ceilings within a single tenant space as listed in Table 1020.2.2 and*
4941 *meeting all of the following conditions:*
4942
 - 4943 1. *Approved automatic smoke-detection is installed along the path of egress within*
4944 *the corridor.*
 - 4945
 - 4946 2. *The actuation of any detector must activate self-annunciating alarms audible in all*
4947 *areas served by the corridor.*
 - 4948
 - 4949 3. *The smoke detection system must be connected to an approved automatic fire alarm*
4950 *system where such a system is provided.”*
4951

4952 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

4978
4979
4980

**“TABLE 1020.2.2
CORRIDOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF SINGLE TENANT SPACE**

CATEGORY	NATURE OF OCCUPANCY SERVED BY CORRIDOR	REQUIRED FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)	
		Without smoke detectors	With smoke detectors
I	Uses and occupancies except those listed in Categories II and III	1	0
II ^{a, b}	Building and other structures that represent a substantial hazard to human life in the event of failure, including but not limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Buildings and other structures whose primary occupancy is public assembly with an occupant load greater than 300. • Buildings and other structures containing elementary school, secondary school, or day care facilities with an occupant load greater than 250. • Buildings and other structures containing adult education facilities such as colleges and universities, with an occupant load greater than 500. • Group I-2 occupancies with an occupant load of 50 or more resident care recipients but not having surgery or emergency treatment facilities. • Group I-3 occupancies. • Any other occupancy with an occupant load greater than 5,000, • Power-generating stations, water treatment facilities for potable water, waste water treatment facilities and other public utility facilities not included in Risk Category III. • Buildings and other structures not included in Risk Category III containing quantities of toxic or explosive materials that exceed maximum allowable quantities per control area as given in Table 307.1(1) or per outdoor control area in accordance with the <i>Dallas Fire Code</i> and are sufficient to pose a threat to the public if released. 	1	1
III ^{a, b}	Buildings and other structures designated as essential facilities, including but not limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Group I-2 occupancies having surgery or emergency treatment facilities. • Fire, rescue, ambulance and police stations and emergency vehicle garages. • Designated earthquake, hurricane or other emergency shelters. • Designated emergency preparedness, communications and operations centers and other facilities required for emergency response. • Power-generating stations and other public utility facilities required as emergency backup facilities required as emergency backup facilities for Risk Category III structures. • Buildings and other structures containing quantities of highly toxic materials that exceed maximum allowable quantities per control area in accordance with the <i>Dallas Fire Code</i> and are sufficient to pose a threat to the public if released. 	1	1

4981

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Aviation control towers, air traffic control centers and emergency aircraft hangars.• Buildings and other structures having critical national defense functions.• Water storage facilities and pump structures required to maintain water pressure for fire suppression.		
--	--	--	--

- 4982 a. For the requirements for occupancies in Group I-2, see Section 407.2.
4983 b. For the requirements for occupancies in Group I-3, see Section 408.8.”

4984

Carryover Dallas Amendment

4986 **107. Subsection 1023.4, “Openings,” of Section 1023, “Interior Exit Stairways and**
4987 **Ramps,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
4988 **amended to read as follows:**

4989 **1023.4 Openings.** *Interior exit stairway* and *ramp* opening protectives shall be in accordance
4990 with the requirements of Section 716.

4991
4992 Openings in *interior exit stairways* and *ramps* other than unprotected exterior openings shall be
4993 limited to those required for *exit access* to the enclosure from normally occupied spaces and for
4994 egress from the enclosure.

4995
4996 Elevators shall not open into *interior exit stairways* and *ramps*.

4997
4998 **1023.5 Penetrations.** Penetrations into or through interior exit *stairways* and *ramps* are
4999 prohibited except for the following:

- 5000 1. Equipment and ductwork necessary for independent ventilation or pressurization.
5001 2. *Fire protection systems*.
5002 3. Security systems.
5003 4. Two-way communication systems.
5004 5. Electrical raceway for fire department communication systems.
5005 6. Electrical raceway serving the *interior exit stairway* and *ramp* and terminating at a steel box
5006 not exceeding 16 square inches (0.010 m²).
5007 7. Structural elements supporting the *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* or enclosure, such as beams
5008 or joists.
5009 8. Equipment and piping necessary for Fire Fighter Air Replenishment System.
5010

5011 Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714. There shall not be
5012 penetrations or communication openings, whether protected or not, between adjacent interior
5013 exit *stairways* and *ramps*.

5014
5015 **Exception:** *Membrane penetrations* shall be permitted on the outside of the *interior exit*
5016 *stairway* and *ramp*. Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714.4.2.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

Carryover Dallas Amendment

108. Subsection 1023.12, “Smokeproof Enclosures,” of Section 1023, “Interior Exit

Stairways and Ramps,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building

Code is amended to read as follows:

“**1023.12 Smokeproof enclosures.** Where required by Section 403.5.4, ~~405.7.2,~~ ~~412.2.2.1~~ ~~1007.1.1,~~ or ~~1007.1.3.2~~ interior exit stairways and ramps shall be smokeproof enclosures in accordance with Section 909.20.

1023.12.1 Termination and extension. A smokeproof enclosure shall terminate at an exit discharge or a public way. The smokeproof enclosure shall be permitted to be extended by an exit passageway in accordance with Section 1023.3. The exit passageway shall be without openings other than the fire door assembly required by Section 1023.3.1 and those necessary for egress from the exit passageway. The exit passageway shall be separated from the remainder of the building by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Exceptions:

1. Openings in the exit passageway serving a smokeproof enclosure are permitted where the exit passageway is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the smokeproof enclosure, and openings are protected as required for access from other floors.
2. The fire barrier separating the smokeproof enclosure from the exit passageway is not required, provided the exit passageway is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the smokeproof enclosure.
3. A smokeproof enclosure shall be permitted to egress through areas on the level of exit discharge or vestibules as permitted by Section 1028.

1023.12.2 Enclosure access. Access to the stairway or ramp within a smokeproof enclosure shall be by way of a vestibule or an open exterior balcony.

Exception: Access is not required by way of a vestibule or exterior balcony for stairways and ramps using the pressurization alternative complying with Section 909.20.5.”

Carryover Dallas Amendment

109. Subparagraph 1030.1.1, “Spaces Under Grandstands and Bleachers,” of

Paragraph 1030.1.1, “Bleachers,” of Subsection 1030.1, “General,” of Section 1030,

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5056 “Assembly,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is
5057 amended to read as follows:

5058 “**1030.1.1.1 Spaces under grandstands and bleachers.** Spaces under *grandstands* or
5059 *bleachers* shall be separated by *fire barriers* complying with Section 707 and horizontal
5060 assemblies complying with Section 711 with not less than 1-hour *fire-resistance-rated*
5061 construction.

5062
5063 **Exceptions:**
5064

- 5065 1. Ticket booths less than 100 square feet in area.
- 5066 2. Toilet rooms.
- 5067 3. ~~Other accessory use areas 1,000 square feet or less in area and equipped with an~~
5068 ~~*automatic sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.~~
- 5069 4. Spaces less than 1000 square feet and built to prevent the extension of fire and
5070 hot gases through penetrations in walls and floors; built to block the free
5071 passage of fire and hot gases within a concealed space; and equipped with
5072 openings of either solid wood doors or solid or honeycomb core steel doors not
5073 less than 1 3/8 inches (34.9 mm) in thickness or an equivalent, or doors/shutters
5074 in compliance with Section 716.5.3 with a fire protection rating of not less than
5075 20 minutes.
- 5076 5. Spaces equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance
5077 with Section 903.3.1.1.”
5078
5079

5080 **Remove Dallas Amendment**

5081 **110. Subsection 1031.1, “General,” of Section 1031, “Emergency Escape and**

5082 **Rescue,” of Chapter 10, “Means of Egress,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**

5083 **amended to read as follows:**

5084 “**1031.1 General.** *Emergency escape and rescue openings* shall comply with the requirements of
5085 this section.

5086 **1031.2 Where required.** In addition to the *means of egress* required by this chapter, *emergency*
5087 *escape and rescue openings* shall be provided in the following occupancies:

- 5088 1. Group R-2 occupancies located in stories with only one *exit* or *access* to only one *exit*
5089 as permitted by Table 1006.3.4(1) and 1006.3.4(2).
- 5090 2. Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5094 *Basements* and sleeping rooms below the fourth *story above grade plane* shall have not fewer than
5095 one exterior *emergency escape and rescue opening* in accordance with this section. Where
5096 *basements* contain one or more sleeping rooms, *emergency escape and rescue openings* shall be
5097 required in each sleeping room but shall not be required in adjoining areas of the *basement*. Such
5098 openings shall open directly into a *public way* or to a *yard* or *court* that opens to a *public way*.

5099

Exceptions:

5100

5101

5102

5103

5104

5105

5106

5107

5108

5109

5110

5111

5112

5113

5114

5115

5116

5117

5118

5119

5120

5121

5122

5123

5124

5125

5126

5127

5128

5129

1. *Basements* with a ceiling height of less than 80 inches (2032 mm) shall not be required to have *emergency escape and rescue openings*.
2. *Emergency escape and rescue openings* are not required from *basements* or sleeping rooms that have an *exit door* or *exit access door* that opens directly into a *public way* or to a *yard, court* or exterior egress balcony that opens to a *public way*.
3. *Basements* without *habitable spaces* and having not more than 200 square feet (18.6 m²) in floor area shall not be required to have *emergency escape and rescue openings*.
4. *Storm shelters* are not required to comply with this section where the shelter is constructed in accordance with ICC 500.
5. Within individual *dwelling* and *sleeping units* in Group R-2 and R-3, where the building is equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, 903.1.3.1.2 or 903.1.3.1.3, *sleeping rooms* in *basements* shall not be required to have *emergency escape and rescue openings* provided that the *basement* has one of the following:

5.1. One *means of egress* and one *emergency escape and rescue opening*.

5.2. Two *means of egress*.

CHAPTER 11 ACCESSIBILITY

Carryover Dallas/COG Amendment

111. Subsection 1102.1, “Design,” of Section 1102, “General,” of Chapter 11,

“Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

“1102.1 Design. Buildings and facilities shall be designed and constructed to be *accessible* in accordance with this code and ICC A117.1.

5133

5134

Exceptions:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 5135 1. Components of projects regulated by and registered with the Architectural Barriers
5136 Division of the Texas Department of Licensing and Regulation shall be deemed to be
5137 in compliance with the requirements of this chapter.
5138
- 5139 2. FHA Type C dwelling units designed and constructed in accordance with the Fair
5140 Housing Act Design Manual—1996 (Updated 1998) will be considered in compliance
5141 with the applicable requirements of this chapter.”
5142

Carryover Dallas Amendment

5143 **112. Paragraph 1103.2.5, “Construction Site,” of Subsection 1103.2, “General**
5144 **Exceptions,” of Section 1103, “Scoping Requirements,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of**
5145 **the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**
5146

5147 **“1103.2.5 Construction sites.** Structures, *sites* and equipment directly associated with the
5148 actual processes of construction including, but not limited to, scaffolding, bridging, materials
5149 hoists, materials storage, [øæ] construction trailers or portable toilet units provided for use
5150 exclusively by construction personnel on a construction site are not required to comply with
5151 this chapter.”
5152

Carryover Dallas Amendment

5153 **113. Subsection 1103.2, “General Exceptions,” of Section 1103, “Scoping**
5154 **Requirements,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
5155 **amended by adding a new Paragraph 1103.2.15, “Restricted Occupancy Spaces,” to read as**
5156 **follows:**
5157

5158 **“1103.2.15 Restricted occupancy spaces.** Vertical access (elevators and platform lifts) is not
5159 required for the second floor of two-story control buildings located within a chemical
5160 manufacturing facility where the second floor is restricted to employees and does not contain
5161 common areas or employment opportunities not otherwise available in accessible locations
5162 within the same building.”
5163

Carryover Dallas Amendment

5164 **114. Subsection 1106.2, “Required,” of Section 1106, “Parking and Passenger**
5165 **Loading Facilities,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
5166 **is amended to read as follows:**
5167

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5168 “**1106.2 Required.** Where parking is provided, *accessible* parking spaces shall be provided in
5169 compliance with Table 1106.2 in addition to the requirements of the Dallas Development Code,
5170 except as required by Sections 1106.3 through 1106.5. Where more than one parking facility is
5171 provided on a *site*, the number of parking spaces required to be *accessible* shall be calculated
5172 separately for each parking facility.

5173
5174 **Exception:** This section does not apply to parking spaces used exclusively for buses, trucks,
5175 other delivery vehicles, law enforcement vehicles or vehicular impound and motor pools where
5176 lots accessed by the public are provided with an *accessible* passenger loading zone.”
5177

5178 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5179 **115. Subsection 1108.2, “Design,” of Section 1108, “Dwelling Units and Sleeping**
5180 **Units,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended**
5181 **to read as follows:**

5182 “**1108.2 Design.** *Dwelling units and sleeping units* that are required to be *Accessible units, Type A*
5183 *units* and *Type B units* shall comply with the applicable portions of Chapter 10 of ICC A117.1.
5184 Units required to be *Type A units* are permitted to be designed and constructed as *Accessible units*.
5185 Units required to be *Type B units* are permitted to be designed and constructed as *Accessible units*
5186 or as *Type A units*. Units required to be *FHA Type C units* are permitted to be designed and
5187 constructed as *Accessible units, Type A units* or *Type B units*.
5188

5189 **1108.2.1 Alternate design.** *FHA Type C dwelling units* designed and constructed with the
5190 following items in accordance with the *Fair Housing Act Design Manual—1996 (Updated*
5191 *1998)* are considered in compliance with the fair housing requirements of this chapter.
5192

5193 **1108.2.1.1 Multifamily dwellings.** All covered multifamily dwellings built for first
5194 occupancy after March 13, 1991 with a building entrance on an *accessible route* must be
5195 designed and constructed in such a manner that:
5196

- 5197 1. The public and common use areas are readily *accessible* to and useable by
5198 handicapped persons;
5199
- 5200 2. All the doors designed to allow passage into and within all premises are sufficiently
5201 wide to allow passage by handicapped persons in wheelchairs; and
5202
- 5203 3. All premises within covered multifamily dwelling units contain the following
5204 features of adaptable design:
5205
 - 5206 3.1. *An accessible route* into and through the covered dwelling unit;
5207
 - 5208 3.2. Light switches, electrical outlets, thermostats and other environmental
5209 controls in accessible locations;

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5210 3.3. Reinforcements in bathroom walls to allow later installation of grab bars
5211 around the toilet, tub, shower stall and shower seat, where such facilities are
5212 provided; and
5213

5214 3.4. Usable kitchens and bathrooms such that an individual in a wheelchair can
5215 maneuver about the space.”
5216

5217 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5218 **116. Subsection 1108.6, “Group R,” of Section 1108, “Dwelling Units and Sleeping**
5219 **Units,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended**
5220 **to read as follows:**

5221 **“1108.6 Group R. Accessible units, Type A units, [~~and~~] Type B units and FHA Type C units** shall
5222 **be provided in Group R occupancies in accordance with Sections 1108.6.1 through 1108.6.4.**

5223 **1108.6.1 Group R-1. Accessible units and Type B units** shall be provided in Group R-1
5224 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1108.6.1.1 and 1108.6.1.2.

5225 **1108.6.1.1 Accessible units.** Accessible dwelling units and sleeping units shall be
5226 provided in accordance with Table 1108.6.1.1. On a multiple-building site, where structures
5227 contain more than 50 dwelling units or sleeping units, the number of Accessible units shall be
5228 determined per structure. On a multiple-building site, where structures contain 50 or fewer
5229 dwelling units or sleeping units, all dwelling units and sleeping units on a site shall be
5230 considered to determine the total number of Accessible units. Accessible units shall be
5231 dispersed among the various classes of units.

5232 **1108.6.1.2 Type B units.** In structures with four or more dwelling units or sleeping units
5233 intended to be occupied as a residence, every dwelling unit and sleeping unit intended to be
5234 occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

5235 **Exception:** The number of Type B units is permitted to be reduced in accordance with
5236 Section 1108.7.

5237 **1108.6.2 Group R-2. Accessible units, Type A units, [~~and~~] Type B units, and FHA Type C units**
5238 shall be provided in Group R-2 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1108.6.2.1 through
5239 1108.6.2.3. Fire walls are not considered in the determination of the number of dwelling units
5240 in a structure.

5241 **1108.6.2.1 Live/work units.** In live/work units constructed in accordance with Section 419,
5242 the nonresidential portion is required to be accessible. In a structure where there are four
5243 or more live/work units intended to be occupied as a residence, the residential portion of

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5250 the *live/work unit* shall be a *Type B unit* or *FHA Type C units* must be provided in
5251 accordance with Section 1108.6.2.1.1.
5252

5253 **Exception:** The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with
5254 Section 1108.7.
5255

5256 **1108.6.2.1.1 FHA Type C units.** In structures with four or more *dwelling units* or
5257 *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence* in a single structure, every
5258 *dwelling unit* shall be at least an *FHA Type C unit*.
5259

5260 **Exception:** The number of *FHA Type C units* is permitted to be reduced in
5261 accordance with the *Fair Housing Act Design Manual—1996 (Updated 1998)*.
5262

5263 **1108.6.2.2 Apartment houses, monasteries and convents.** *Type A units* and *Type B units*
5264 shall be provided in apartment houses, monasteries and convents in accordance with
5265 Sections 1108.6.2.2.1 and 1108.6.2.2.2 or *FHA Type C units* must be provided in
5266 accordance with Section 1108.6.2.1.1. Bedrooms in monasteries and convents shall be
5267 counted as units for the purpose of determining the number of units. Where the bedrooms
5268 are grouped in *sleeping units*, only one bedroom in each *sleeping unit* shall count toward
5269 the number of required *Type A units*.
5270

5271 **1108.6.2.2.1 Type A units.** In Group R-2 occupancies containing more than 20
5272 *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*, at least 2 percent but not less than one of the units shall
5273 be a *Type A unit*. All Group R-2 units on a *site* shall be considered to determine the
5274 total number of units and the required number of *Type A units*. *Type A units* shall be
5275 dispersed among the various classes of units.
5276

5277 **Exceptions:**

- 5278
- 5279 1. The number of *Type A units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with
5280 Section 1108.7.
5281
 - 5282 2. *Existing structures* on a *site* shall not contribute to the total number of units
5283 on a *site*.
5284

5285 **1108.6.2.2.2 Type B units.** Where there are four or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping*
5286 *units intended to be occupied as a residence* in a single structure, every *dwelling unit*
5287 and *sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be a *Type B unit*.
5288

5289 **Exception:** The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance
5290 with Section 1108.7
5291

5292 **1108.6.2.3 Group R-2 other than live/work units, apartment houses, monasteries and**
5293 **convents.** In Group R-2 occupancies, other than *live/work units*, apartment houses,
5294 monasteries and convents falling within the scope of Sections 1108.6.2.1 and 1108.6.2.2,

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5295 *Accessible units* and *Type B units* shall be provided in accordance with Sections
5296 1108.6.2.3.1 and 1108.6.2.3.2 or *FHA Type C units* must be provided in accordance with
5297 Section 1108.6.2.1.1. Bedrooms within congregate living facilities shall be counted as
5298 *sleeping units* for the purpose of determining the number of units. Where the *sleeping units*
5299 are grouped into suites, only one *sleeping unit* in each suite shall be permitted to count
5300 towards the number of required *Accessible units*.

5301
5302 **1108.6.2.3.1 Accessible units.** *Accessible dwelling units* and *sleeping units* shall be
5303 provided in accordance with Table 1108.6.1.1.

5304
5305 **1108.6.2.3.2 Type B units.** Where there are four or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping*
5306 *units intended to be occupied as a residence* in a single structure, every *dwelling unit*
5307 and every *sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be a *Type B unit*.

5308
5309 **Exception:** The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance
5310 with Section 1108.7.

5311
5312 **1108.6.3 Group R-3.** In Group R-3 occupancies where there are four or more *dwelling units*
5313 or *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence* in a single structure, every *dwelling*
5314 *unit* and *sleeping unit intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be a *Type B unit* or an *FHA*
5315 *Type C unit*. Bedrooms within congregate living facilities, dormitories, sororities, fraternities,
5316 and boarding houses shall be counted as *sleeping units* for the purpose of determining the
5317 number of units.

5318 **Exceptions:**

- 5319
5320
- 5321 1. The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section
5322 1108.7.
 - 5323
5324 2. The number of *FHA Type C units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with
5325 the *Fair Housing Act Design Manual—1996 (Updated 1998)*.
 - 5326

5327 **1108.6.4 Group R-4.** *Accessible units* and *Type B units* shall be provided in Group R-4
5328 occupancies in accordance with Sections 1108.6.4.1 and 1108.6.4.2 or *FHA Type C units* must
5329 be provided in accordance with Section 1108.6.2.1.1.

5330
5331 **1108.6.4.1 Accessible units.** In Group R-4 Condition 1, at least one of the *dwelling units*
5332 or *sleeping units* shall be an *Accessible unit*. In Group R-4 Condition 2, at least two of the
5333 *dwelling units* or *sleeping units* shall be an *Accessible unit*. Bedrooms in Group R-4
5334 facilities shall be counted as *sleeping units* for the purpose of determining the number of
5335 units.

5336
5337 **1108.6.4.2 Type B units.** In structures with four or more *dwelling units* or *sleeping units*
5338 *intended to be occupied as a residence*, every *dwelling unit* and *sleeping unit intended to*

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5339

be occupied as a residence shall be a Type B unit.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5340 **Exception:** The number of *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with
5341 Section 1108.7.”

5342

5343 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5344 **117. Subsection 1108.7, “General Exceptions,” of Section 1108, “Dwelling Units**
5345 **and Sleeping Units,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
5346 **is amended to read as follows:**

5347 **“1108.7 General exceptions.** Where specifically permitted by Section 1108.5 or 1108.6, the
5348 required number of *Type A units* and *Type B units* is permitted to be reduced in accordance with
5349 Sections 1108.7.1 through 1108.7.5.

5350

5351 **1108.7.1 Structures without elevator service.** Where no elevator service is provided in a
5352 structure, only the *dwelling units* and *sleeping units* that are located on stories indicated in
5353 Sections 1108.7.1.1 and 1108.7.1.2 are required to be *Type A units*, [~~and~~] *Type B units*, or *FHA*
5354 *Type C units* [~~respectively~~]. The number of *Type A units* shall be determined in accordance
5355 with Section 1108.6.2.2.1.

5356

5357 **1108.7.1.1 One story with Type B or FHA Type C units required.** At least one *story*
5358 containing *dwelling units* or *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence* shall be
5359 provided with an *accessible* entrance from the exterior of the structure and all units
5360 *intended to be occupied as a residence* on that *story* shall be *Type B units* or *FHA Type C*
5361 *units*.

5362

5363 **1108.7.1.2 Additional stories with Type B units or FHA Type C units.** Where stories
5364 have entrances not included in determining compliance with Section 1108.7.1.1, and such
5365 entrances are proximate to arrival points intended to serve units on that *story*, as indicated
5366 in Items 1 and 2, all *dwelling units* and *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence*
5367 served by that entrance on that *story* shall be *Type B units* or *FHA Type C units*.

5368

5369 1. Where the slopes of the undisturbed *site* measured between the planned entrance
5370 and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the
5371 planned entrance are 10 percent or less, and

5372

5373 2. Where the slopes of the planned finished grade measured between the entrance and
5374 all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned
5375 entrance are 10 percent or less.

5376

5377 Where arrival points are within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the entrance, the closest
5378 arrival point shall be used to determine access unless that arrival point serves the *story*
5379 required by Section 1108.7.1.1.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5380 **1108.7.2 Multistory units.** A *multistory dwelling unit* or *sleeping unit* that is not provided with
5381 elevator service is not required to be a *Type B unit* or *FHA Type C unit*. Where a *multistory*
5382 *unit* is provided with external elevator service to only one floor, the floor provided with
5383 elevator service shall be the primary entry to the unit, shall comply with the requirements for
5384 a *Type B unit* or *an FHA Type C unit* and, where provided within the unit, a living area, a
5385 kitchen and a toilet facility shall be provided on that floor.
5386

5387 **1108.7.3 Elevator service to the lowest story with units.** Where elevator service in the
5388 building provides an *accessible route* only to the lowest *story* containing *dwelling units* or
5389 *sleeping units intended to be occupied as a residence*, only the units on that *story* that are
5390 *intended to be occupied as a residence* are required to be *Type B units* or *FHA Type C units*.
5391

5392 **1108.7.4 Site impracticality.** On a *site* with multiple non-elevator buildings, the number of
5393 units required by Section 1108.7.1 to be *Type B units* or *FHA Type C units* is permitted to be
5394 reduced to a percentage that is equal to the percentage of the entire *site* having grades, prior to
5395 development, that are less than 10 percent, provided that all of the following conditions are
5396 met:
5397

- 5398 1. Not less than 20 percent of the units required by Section 1108.7.1 on the *site* are *Type*
5399 *B units* or *FHA Type C units*;
5400
- 5401 2. Units required by Section 1108.7.1, where the slope between the building entrance
5402 serving the units on that *story* and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival point is no greater
5403 than 8.33 percent, are *Type B units* or *FHA Type C units*;
5404
- 5405 3. Units required by Section 1108.7.1, where an elevated walkway is planned between a
5406 building entrance serving the units on that *story* and a pedestrian or vehicular arrival
5407 point and the slope between them is 10 percent or less, are *Type B units* or *FHA Type*
5408 *C units*; and
5409
- 5410 4. Units served by an elevator in accordance with Section 1108.7.3 are *Type B units* or
5411 *FHA Type C units*.
5412

5413 **1108.7.5 Design flood elevation.** The required number of *Type A units*, [~~and~~] *Type B units* or
5414 *FHA Type C units* shall not apply to a *site* where the required elevation of the lowest floor or
5415 the lowest horizontal structural building members of nonelevator buildings are at or above the
5416 *design flood elevation* resulting in:
5417

- 5418 1. A difference in elevation between the minimum required floor elevation at the primary
5419 entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm)
5420 exceeding 30 inches (762 mm), and
5421
- 5422 2. A slope exceeding 10 percent between the minimum required floor elevation at the
5423 primary entrances and vehicular and pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240
5424 mm).

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5425 Where no such arrival points are within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the primary entrances,
5426 the closest arrival points shall be used.

5427

5428 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5429 **118. Subsection 1110.1, “General,” of Section 1110, “Other Features and**
5430 **Facilities,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
5431 **amended to read as follows:**

5432 **“1110.1 General.** *Accessible* building features and facilities shall be provided in accordance with
5433 Sections 1110.2 through 1110.15.

5434

5435 **Exceptions:**

5436

5437 1. Accessible units, Type A units and Type B units shall comply with Chapter 10 of ICC
5438 A117.1.

5439

5440 2. FHA Type C dwelling units designed and constructed in accordance with the Fair
5441 Housing Act Design Manual—1996(Updated 1998) are considered in compliance with
5442 these provisions.”
5443

5444 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5445 **119. Paragraph 1110.2.1, “Family or Assisted-Use Toilet and Bathing Rooms,” of**
5446 **Subsection 1110.2, “Toilet and Bathing Facilities,” of Section 1110, “Other Features and**
5447 **Facilities,” of Chapter 11, “Accessibility,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
5448 **amended to read as follows:**

5449 **“1110.2.1 Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms.** In assembly and mercantile
5450 occupancies, an *accessible* family or assisted-use toilet room shall be provided where an
5451 aggregate of six or more male or [~~and~~] female water closets are provided [~~is required~~]. In
5452 buildings of mixed occupancy, only those water closets required for the assembly or mercantile
5453 occupancy shall be used to determine the family or assisted-use toilet room requirement. In
5454 recreational facilities where separate-sex bathing rooms are provided, an *accessible* family or
5455 assisted-use bathing room shall be provided. Fixtures located within family or assisted-use
5456 toilet and bathing rooms shall be included in determining the number of fixtures provided in
5457 an occupancy.

5458

5459 **Exception:** Where each separate-sex bathing room has only one shower or bathtub fixture,
5460 a family or assisted-use bathing room is not required.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5461 **1110.2.1.1 Standard.** Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall comply with
5462 Sections 1110.2.1.2 through 1110.2.1.7.

5463
5464 **1110.2.1.2 Family or assisted-use toilet rooms.** Family or assisted-use toilet rooms shall
5465 include only one water closet and only one lavatory. A family or assisted-use bathing room
5466 in accordance with Section 1110.2.1.3 shall be considered a family or assisted-use toilet
5467 room.

5468
5469 **Exception:** The following additional fixtures shall be permitted in a family or assisted-
5470 use toilet room.

- 5471 1. A urinal.
5472 2. A child-height water closet.
5473 3. A child-height lavatory.

5474
5475 **1110.2.1.3 Family or assisted-use bathing rooms.** Family or assisted-use bathing rooms
5476 shall include only one shower or bathtub fixture. Family or assisted-use bathing rooms shall
5477 also include one water closet and one lavatory. Where storage facilities are provided for
5478 separate-sex bathing rooms, *accessible* storage facilities shall be provided for family or
5479 assisted-use bathing rooms.

5480
5481 **1110.2.1.4 Location.** Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall be located on
5482 an *accessible route*. Family or assisted-use toilet rooms shall be located not more than one
5483 *story* above or below separate-sex toilet rooms. The *accessible route* from any separate-
5484 sex toilet room to a family or assisted-use toilet room shall not exceed 500 feet (152 m).

5485
5486 **1110.2.1.5 Prohibited location.** In passenger transportation facilities and airports, the
5487 *accessible route* from separate-sex toilet rooms to a family or assisted-use toilet room shall
5488 not pass-through security checkpoints.

5489
5490 **1110.2.1.7 Privacy.** Doors to family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall be
5491 securable from within the room and be provided with an “occupied” indicator.”

5492

5493 5497 **CHAPTER 12**
5494 5498 **INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT**

5495 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5496
5499 **120. Subsection 1202.1, “General,” of Section 1202, “Ventilation,” of Chapter 12,**

5500 **“Interior Environment,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as**

5501 **follows:**

5502 **“1202.1 General.** Buildings shall be provided with natural ventilation in accordance with Section
5503 1202.5, or mechanical ventilation in accordance with the *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Mechanical Code*.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5504 Where the air infiltration rate in a *dwelling unit* is [~~less than~~] 5 air changes or less per hour
5505 when tested with a blower door at a pressure 0.2 inch w.c. (50 Pa) in accordance with Section
5506 402.4.1.2 of the *Dallas* [~~International~~] *Energy Conservation Code—Residential Provisions*, the
5507 *dwelling unit* shall be ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 403 of the *Dallas*
5508 [~~International~~] *Mechanical Code. Ambulatory care facilities* and Group I-2 occupancies shall be
5509 ventilated by mechanical means in accordance with Section 407 of the *Dallas* [~~International~~]
5510 *Mechanical Code.*”

5511

5512 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5513 **121. Paragraph 1210.2.2, “Walls and Partitions,” of Subsection 1210.2, “Finish**
5514 **Materials,” of Section 1210, “Toilet and Bathroom Requirements,” of Chapter 12, “Interior**
5515 **Environment,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

5516 **“1210.2.2 Walls and partitions.** Walls and partitions within 2 feet (610 mm) of service sinks,
5517 urinals and water closets shall have a smooth, hard, nonabsorbent surface, to a height of not
5518 less than 4 feet (1219 mm) above the floor, and except for structural elements, the materials
5519 used in such walls shall be of a type that is not adversely affected by moisture.

5520

5521 **Exception:** This section does not apply to the following buildings and spaces:

5522

- 5523 1. Dwelling units and sleeping units.
- 5524
- 5525 2. Toilet rooms that are not accessible to the public and that have not more than one
- 5526 water closet provided that walls around urinals comply with the minimum
- 5527 surrounding material specified by Section 419.3 of the *Dallas Plumbing Code*.
- 5528

5529 Accessories such as grab bars, towel bars, paper dispensers and soap dishes, provided on
5530 or within walls, shall be installed and sealed to protect structural elements from moisture.”

5531

5532

5536 **CHAPTER 14**

5533

5537 **EXTERIOR WALLS**

5534 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5535

5538 **122. Subsection 1404.5, “Wood Veneers,” of Section 1404, “Installation of Wall**
5539 **Coverings,” of Chapter 14, “Exterior Walls,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
5540 **amended to read as follows:**

5541 **“1404.5 Wood veneers.** Wood veneers on exterior walls of buildings of Type I, II, III and IV
5542 construction shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) nominal thickness, 0.438-inch (11.1 mm)
5543 exterior hardboard siding or 0.375-inch (9.5 mm) exterior-type wood structural panels or
5544 particleboard and shall conform to the following:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 5545 1. The veneer shall not exceed 40 feet (12 190 mm) in height above grade. Where fire-
5546 retardant-treated wood is used, the height shall not exceed 60 feet (18 290 mm) in height
5547 above grade.
5548
- 5549 2. The veneer is attached to or furred from a noncombustible backing that is fire-resistance
5550 rated as required by other provisions of this code.
5551
- 5552 3. Where open or spaced wood veneers (without concealed spaces) are used, they shall not
5553 project more than 24 inches (610 mm) from the building wall.
5554

5555 See Sections 1405.2.1 and 1405.3 for additional limitations.”
5556

5557 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5558 **123. Subparagraph 1405.1.1.1, “Ignition Resistance,” of Paragraph 1405.1.1,**
5559 **“Type I, II, III and IV Construction,” of Subsection 1405.1, “Combustible Exterior Wall**
5560 **Coverings,” of Section 1405, “Combustible Materials on the Exterior Side of Exterior**
5561 **Walls,” of Chapter 14, “Exterior Walls,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended**
5562 **to read as follows:**

5563 **“1405.1.1.1 Ignition resistance.** Where permitted by Section 1405.1.1, combustible
5564 exterior wall coverings shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 268.
5565

5566 **Exceptions:**

- 5567
- 5568 1. Wood or wood-based products installed at fully sprinklered exterior exitways,
5569 exterior stairs or exterior exit balconies of Group R occupancies.
5570
- 5571 2. Other combustible materials covered with an exterior weather covering, other
5572 than vinyl sidings, included in and complying with the thickness requirements
5573 of Table 1404.2.
5574
- 5575 3. Aluminum having a minimum thickness of 0.019 inch (0.48 mm).
5576
- 5577 4. Materials of a Class II flame spread classification may be substituted in lieu of
5578 testing in accordance with NFPA 268 for exterior wall coverings of wood or
5579 wood-based products and of Type V construction in Group R, Division 1, 2 and
5580 4 occupancies. The finish materials must be such that the required flame spread
5581 is an inherent characteristic of the material or is permanently achieved by
5582 pressure impregnation.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5583 **1405.1.1.1.1 Fire separation 5 feet or less.** Where installed on exterior walls having a
5584 fire separation distance of 5 feet (1524 mm) or less, combustible exterior wall coverings
5585 shall not exhibit sustained flaming as defined in NFPA 268.

5586
5587 **1405.1.1.1.2 Fire separation greater than 5 feet.** For fire separation distances greater
5588 than 5 feet (1524 mm), any exterior wall covering shall be permitted that has been
5589 exposed to a reduced level of incident radiant heat flux in accordance with the NFPA
5590 268 test method without exhibiting sustained flaming. The minimum fire separation
5591 distance required for the exterior wall covering shall be determined from Table
5592 1405.2.1.1.2 based on the maximum tolerable level of incident radiant heat flux that
5593 does not cause sustained flaming of the exterior wall covering.”

5594
5595

CHAPTER 15 ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOF STRUCTURES

5596
5597

Carryover Dallas Amendment

5598 **124. Table 1505.1, “Minimum Roof Covering Classification for Types of**
5599 **Construction,” of Subsection [BF] 1505.1, “General,” of Section 1505, “Fire Classification,”**
5600 **of Chapter 15, “Roof Assemblies and Rooftop Structures,” of the 2021 International Building**
5601 **Code is amended to read as follows:**

5603 **“TABLE 1505.1^{a[†b]}**
5604 **MINIMUM ROOF COVERING CLASSIFICATION FOR TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION**

IA	IB	IIA	IIB	IIIA	IIIB	IV	VA	VB
B	B	B	C ^{b[c]}	B	C ^{b[c]}	B	B	C ^{b[c]}

5606 For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m².

- 5607
5608 a. Unless otherwise required in accordance with the *International Wildland-Urban Interface Code* or due to the
5609 location of the building within a fire district in accordance with Appendix D.
- 5610 b. Nonclassified roof coverings shall be permitted on buildings of [~~Group R-3 and~~] Group U occupancies having
5611 not more than 200 square feet of projected roof area. When exceeding 200 square feet of projected roof
5612 area, buildings of Group U occupancies may use non-rated, non-combustible [~~where there is a minimum fire-~~
5613 ~~separation distance of 6 feet measured from the leading edge of the~~] roof coverings.
- 5614 [~~e. Buildings that are not more than two stories above grade plane and having not more than 6,000 square feet of~~
5615 ~~projected roof area and where there is a minimum 10 foot fire separation distance from the leading edge of the~~
5616 ~~roof to a lot line on all sides of the building, except for street fronts or public ways, shall be permitted to have~~
5617 ~~roofs of No. 1 cedar or redwood shakes and No. 1 shingles constructed in accordance with Section 1505.7.]”~~

5618
5619

Carryover Dallas Amendment

5620 **125. Subsection [BF] 1505.7, “Special Purpose Roofs,” of Section 1505, “Fire**
5621 **Classification,” of Chapter 15, “Roof Assemblies and Rooftop Structures,” of the 2021**
5622 **International Building Code is deleted.**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5623 Carryover Dallas Amendment

5624 126. Paragraph [BG] 1511.2.4, “Type of Construction,” of Subsection [BG] 1510.2,
5625 “Penthouses,” of Section 1511, “Rooftop Structures,” of Chapter 15, “Roof Assemblies and
5626 Rooftop Structures,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

5627 “[BG] 1511.2.4 Type of construction. Penthouses shall be constructed with walls, floors and
5628 roofs as required for the type of construction of the building on which such penthouses are
5629 built. All structures must be designed by an engineer registered in the State of Texas.
5630

5631 Exceptions:

- 5632
- 5633 1. On buildings of Type I construction, the exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with
5634 a *fire separation distance* greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet (6096
5635 mm) shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating. The
5636 exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a fire separation distance of 20 feet
5637 (6096 mm) or greater shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating.
5638
 - 5639 2. On buildings of Type I construction two stories or less in height above grade plane
5640 or of Type II construction, the exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a *fire*
5641 *separation distance* greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet (6096 mm)
5642 shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating or a lesser
5643 fire-resistance rating as required by Table 705.5 and be constructed of fire-
5644 retardant-treated wood. The exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a *fire*
5645 *separation distance* of 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater shall be permitted to be
5646 constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood and shall not be required to have a fire-
5647 resistance rating. Interior framing and walls shall be permitted to be constructed of
5648 fire-retardant-treated wood.
5649
 - 5650 3. On buildings of Type III, IV or V construction, the exterior walls of penthouses
5651 with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet
5652 (6096 mm) shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating
5653 or a lesser fire-resistance rating as required by Table 705.5. On buildings of Type
5654 III, IV or VA construction, the exterior walls of penthouses with a fire separation
5655 distance of 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater shall be permitted to be of heavy timber
5656 construction complying with section 602.4 and 2304.11 or noncombustible
5657 construction or fire-retardant-treated wood and shall not be required to have a fire-
5658 resistance rating.”
5659

5660 Carryover Dallas Amendment

5661 127. Subsection [BS] 1511.7, “Other Rooftop Structures,” of Section 1511,
5662 “Rooftop Structures,” of Chapter 15, “Roof Assemblies and Rooftop Structures,” of the 2021

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5663 International Building Code is amended by adding a **new** Paragraph 1511.7.6,
5664 “Architectural Appendages,” to read as follows:

5665 “1511.7.6 Architectural appendages. Architectural appendages used exclusively as
5666 decoration or embellishment must comply with Section 1511.2 as penthouses and be of the
5667 same type of construction as required for the exterior walls of the building or the roof in which
5668 such appendages are located.”
5669

5670 Carryover Dallas Amendment

5671 **128. Section 1511, “Rooftop Structures,” of Chapter 15, “Roof Assemblies and**
5672 **Rooftop Structures,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a **new****
5673

5674 **Subsection 1511.9, “Wood Surfaces,” to read as follows:**

5675 “1511.9 Wood surfaces. Where roof assemblies are required to be fire rated, wood surfaces on
5676 roof assemblies such as walks, running tracks and other similar surfaces may be installed when
5677 constructed of fire-retardant treated wood. Any space between the wood and the roof surface must
5678 be filled with inorganic or Class I material or the space must be fire stopped not to exceed 8 feet
5679 (2438.4 mm) in any direction. Weep holes of sufficient size to prevent water accumulation on the
5680 roof are permitted.”
5681

5682 Carryover Dallas Amendment

5683 **129. Subsection 1512.1, “General,” of Section 1512, “Reroofing,” of Chapter 15,**
5684 **“Roof Assemblies and Rooftop Structures,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**

5685 **amended to read as follows:**

5686 **“1512.1 General.** Materials and methods of application used for recovering or replacing an
5687 existing roof *covering shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 15. All individual*
5688 *replacement shingles or shakes shall be in compliance with the rating required by Table 1505.1.*
5689

5690 **Exceptions:**

- 5691
- 5692 1. *Roof replacement or roof recover* of existing low-slope roof coverings shall not be
5693 required to meet the minimum design slope requirement of one-quarter unit vertical in
5694 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in Section 1507 for roofs that provide *positive roof*
5695 *drainage.*
 - 5696 2. Recovering or replacing an existing *roof covering* shall not be required to meet the
5697 requirement for secondary (emergency overflow) drains or *scuppers* in Section 1502.2
5698 for roofs that provide for *positive roof drainage*. For the purposes of this exception,
5699 existing secondary drainage or *scupper* systems required in accordance with this code
5700

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5701 shall not be removed unless they are replaced by secondary drains or *scuppers* designed
5702 and installed in accordance with Section 1502.2.”

5703

5704 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5705 **130. Paragraph 1512.2.1, “Roof Recover,” of Subsection 1512.2, “Roof**
5706 **Replacement,” of Section 1512, “Reroofing,” of Chapter 15, “Roof Assemblies and Rooftop**
5707 **Structures,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

5708 **“1512.2.1 Roof recover.** The installation of a new roof covering over an existing roof covering
5709 shall be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

5710

- 5711 1. Where the new roof covering is installed in accordance with the roof covering
5712 manufacturer’s approved instructions.
- 5713
- 5714 2. Complete and separate roofing systems, such as standing-seam *metal roof panel*
5715 systems, that are designed to transmit the roof *loads* directly to the building’s structural
5716 system and that do not rely on existing roofs and roof coverings for support, shall not
5717 require the removal of existing roof coverings.
- 5718
- 5719 3. Metal panel, metal shingle and concrete and clay tile roof coverings shall be permitted
5720 to be installed over existing wood shake roofs when applied in accordance with Section
5721 1512.3.
- 5722
- 5723 4. The application of a new protective roof coating over an existing protective roof
5724 coating, *metal roof panel*, built-up roof, spray polyurethane foam roofing system, *metal*
5725 *roof shingles*, mineral-surfaced roll roofing, modified bitumen roofing or thermoset and
5726 thermoplastic single-ply roofing shall be permitted without tear off of existing roof
5727 coverings.
- 5728
- 5729 5. Where the maximum number of roof coverings, including the new roof covering
5730 installation, does not exceed two.
- 5731

5732 **1512.2.1.1 Exceptions.** A *roof recover* shall not be permitted where any of the following
5733 conditions occur:

5734

- 5735 1. Where the existing roof or *roof covering* is water soaked or has deteriorated to the
5736 point that the existing roof or *roof covering* is not adequate as a base for additional
5737 roofing.
- 5738
- 5739 2. Where the existing *roof covering* is slate, clay, cement or asbestos-cement tile.
- 5740
- 5741 3. Where the existing roof has two or more applications of any type of *roof covering*. ”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5742 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5743 **131. Subsection 1612.1, “General,” of Section 1612, “Flood Loads,” of Chapter 16,**

5744 **“Structural Design,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

5745 **“1612.1 General.** Within *flood hazard areas* as established in Section 1612.3, all new construction
5746 of buildings, structures and portions of buildings and structures, including substantial improvement
5747 and restoration of substantial damage to buildings and structures, shall be designed and constructed
5748 to resist the effects of flood hazards and flood loads. For buildings that are located in more than one
5749 *flood hazard area*, the provisions associated with the most restrictive *flood hazard area* shall apply.

5750
5751 **Exception:** Buildings and structures constructed and elevated as required by floodplain
5752 regulations in Article V of the *Dallas Development Code*.”
5753

5754 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5755 **132. Subsection 1704.2, “Special Inspections and Tests,” of Section 1704, “Special**

5756 **Inspections and Tests, Contractor Responsibility and Structural Observation,” of Chapter**

5757 **17, “Special Inspections and Tests,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to**

5758 **read as follows:**

5759 **“1704.2 Special inspections and tests.** Where application is made to the *building official* for
5760 construction as specified in Section 301 of Chapter 52, “Administrative Provisions for the
5761 Construction Codes” of the *Dallas City Code* [~~405~~], the owner or the owner’s authorized agent, or
5762 the registered design professional in responsible charge, other than the contractor, shall employ one
5763 or more *approved agencies* to provide *special inspections* and tests during construction on the types
5764 of work listed under Section 1705 and identify the *approved agencies* to the *building official*. The
5765 special inspector shall not be employed by the contractor. These *special inspections* and tests are
5766 in addition to the inspections identified by the *building official* that are identified in Section 304
5767 of Chapter 52, “Administrative Provisions for the Construction Codes” of the *Dallas City Code*
5768 [~~440~~].
5769

5770 **Exceptions:**

- 5771
- 5772 1. *Special inspections* and tests are not required for construction of a minor nature or as
5773 warranted by conditions in the jurisdiction as *approved* by the *building official*.
 - 5774
 - 5775 2. Unless otherwise required by the *building official*, *special inspections* and tests are not
5776 required for Group U occupancies that are accessory to a residential occupancy
5777 including, but not limited to, those listed in Section 312.1.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 5778 3. *Special inspections* and tests are not required for portions of structures designed and
5779 constructed in accordance with the cold-formed steel light-frame construction
5780 provisions of Section 2211.1.2 or the conventional light-frame construction provisions
5781 of Section 2308.
5782
- 5783 4. The contractor is permitted to employ the *approved agencies* where the contractor is
5784 also the owner.
5785

5786 **1704.2.1 Special inspector qualifications.** Prior to the start of the construction or upon
5787 request, the *approved agencies* shall provide written documentation to the registered design
5788 professional in responsible charge and the building official demonstrating the competence and
5789 relevant experience or training of the *special inspectors* who will perform the *special*
5790 *inspections* and tests during construction. Experience or training shall be considered relevant
5791 where the documented experience or training is related in complexity to the same type of
5792 *special inspection* or testing activities for projects of similar complexity and material qualities.
5793 These qualifications are in addition to qualifications specified in other sections of this code.
5794

5795 The *registered design professional in responsible charge* and engineers of record involved
5796 in the design of the project are permitted to act as the *approved agency* and their personnel are
5797 permitted to act as special inspectors for the work designed by them, provided they qualify as
5798 special inspectors.
5799

5800 **1704.2.2 Access for special inspection.** The construction or work for which *special inspection*
5801 or testing is required shall remain accessible and exposed for *special inspection* or testing
5802 purposes until completion of the required *special inspections* or tests.
5803

5804 **1704.2.3 Statement of special inspections.** The applicant shall submit a statement of *special*
5805 *inspections* in accordance with Section 301.4.7 of Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures for
5806 the Construction Codes,” of the *Dallas City Code* [~~107.1~~] as a condition for permit issuance.
5807 This statement shall be in accordance with Section 1704.3.
5808

5809 **Exception:** A statement of *special inspections* is not required for portions of structures
5810 designed and constructed in accordance with the cold-formed steel light-frame construction
5811 provisions of Section 2211.1.2 or the conventional light-frame construction provisions of
5812 Section 2308.
5813

5814 **1704.2.4 Report requirement.** *Approved agencies* shall keep records of special inspections
5815 and tests. The *approved agency* shall submit reports of *special inspections* and tests to the
5816 *building official* upon request and to the *registered design professional in responsible charge*.
5817 Individual inspection r[~~R~~]eports shall indicate that work inspected or tested was or was not
5818 completed in conformance to *approved construction documents*. Discrepancies shall be
5819 brought to the immediate attention of the contractor for correction. If they are not corrected,
5820 the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the *building official* and to the *registered*
5821 *design professional in responsible charge* prior to the completion of that phase of the work. A
5822 final report documenting required *special inspections* and tests, and correction of any

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5823 discrepancies noted in the inspections or tests, shall be submitted at a point in time agreed upon
5824 prior to the start of work by the owner or the owner’s authorized agent to the *building official*.
5825

5826 **1704.2.5 Special inspection of fabricated items.** Where fabrication of structural, load-bearing
5827 or lateral load-resisting members or assemblies is being conducted on the premises of a
5828 fabricator’s shop, *special inspections* of the *fabricated items* shall be performed during
5829 fabrication, except where the fabricator has been approved to perform work without special
5830 inspections in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.1.
5831

5832 **1704.2.5.1 Fabricator approval.** *Special inspections* during fabrications required by
5833 Section 1704 are not required where the work is done on the premises of a fabricator
5834 approved to perform such work without *special inspection*. Approval shall be based on
5835 review of the fabricator's written procedural and quality control manuals and workmanship,
5836 with periodic auditing of fabrication practices by an approved agency, or a fabricator that
5837 is enrolled in a nationally accepted inspections program or the *building official*. At
5838 completion of fabrication, the acceptable or approved fabricator shall submit a *certificate*
5839 *of compliance* to the owner or the owner’s authorized agent or the registered design
5840 professional in responsible charge, [for submittal to the building official as specified in
5841 Section 1704.5.] stating that the work was performed in accordance with the *approved*
5842 *construction documents*. The certificate of compliance shall also be made available to the
5843 building official upon request.”
5844

5845 **New Dallas Amendment**

5846 133. **Section 1705.1.1, “Special Cases,” of Section 1705, “Required Special**
5847 **Inspections and Tests,” of Chapter 17, “Special Inspections and Tests,” of the 2021**

5848 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

5849 “**1705.1.1 Special cases.** Special inspections and tests shall be required for proposed work that
5850 is, in the opinion of the building official, unusual in its nature or to satisfactorily administer other
5851 provisions of the codes, such as, but not limited to, the following examples:
5852

- 5853 1. Construction materials and systems that are alternatives to materials and systems
5854 prescribed by this code.
5855
- 5856 2. Unusual design applications of materials described in this code.
5857
- 5858 3. Materials and systems required to be installed in accordance with additional
5859 manufacturer’s instructions that prescribe requirements not contained in this code or in
5860 standards referenced by this code.
5861
- 5862 4. Work designated for special inspections as specified in Section 304 of Chapter 52,
5863 “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Code.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5864 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5865 134. Section 1705, “Required Special Inspections and Tests,” of Chapter 17,
5866 “Special Inspections and Tests,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by
5867 adding a **new** Subsection 1705.21, “Special Inspections for Dallas Energy Conservation Code
5868 Compliance,” to read as follows:

5869 **“1705.21 Special inspections for Dallas Energy Conservation Code compliance. *Special***
5870 ***inspections* are required to verify compliance with the *Dallas Energy Conservation Code* in**
5871 **accordance with Section 1705.21.1 and 1705.21.2.**
5872

5873 **1705.21.1 Scope of inspection and testing.** The scope of the test is as follows:
5874

- 5875 1. Building envelope.
- 5876
- 5877 2. Building mechanical system including air leakage testing and duct leakage testing, as
5878 applicable.
- 5879
- 5880 3. Service water heating.
- 5881
- 5882 4. Electric lighting and power system.
- 5883

5884 **1705.21.2 Qualifications.** Special inspectors for *Dallas Energy Conservation Code*
5885 *inspections* shall have a current International Code Council certification in the relevant energy
5886 code inspection specialty as required by the state of Texas.”
5887

5888 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5889 135. Section 1705, “Required Special Inspections and Tests,” of Chapter 17,
5890 “Special Inspections and Tests,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by
5891 adding a **new** Subsection 1705.22, “Special Inspections for Dallas Green Code Construction
5892 Code Compliance,” to read as follows:

5893 **“1705.22 Special inspections for Dallas Green Construction Code compliance. *Special***
5894 ***inspections* are required to verify compliance with the *Dallas Green Construction Code* in**
5895 **accordance with Sections 1705.22.1 and 1705.22.2.**
5896

5897 **1705.22.1 Scope of inspection and testing.**

5898

5899 **1705.22.1.1 Single-family or duplex structures.** The scope of work required is stipulated
5900 in the *Dallas Green Construction Code*.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5901 **1705.22.1.2 Commercial structures.** The scope of work required is stipulated in the
5902 *Dallas Green Construction Code.*
5903

5904 **1705.22.2 Qualifications.** Special inspectors for *Dallas Green Construction Code* inspections
5905 shall be qualified as stipulated by the building official.”
5906

5907 **New COG Amendment**

5908 136. Subsection 1809.5, “Frost protection,” of Section 1809, “Shallow
5909 Foundations,” of Chapter 18, “Soils and Foundations,” of the 2021 International Building
5910 Code is amended to read as follows:

5911 **“1809.5 Frost protection.** Except where otherwise protected from frost, foundations and other
5912 permanent supports of buildings and structures shall be protected from frost by one or more of
5913 the following methods:

- 5914 1. Extending below the frost line of the locality.
- 5915 2. Constructing in accordance with ASCE 32.
- 5916 3. Erecting on solid rock.

5917
5918 **Exception:** Free-standing buildings meeting all of the following conditions shall not be
5919 required to be protected:

- 5920 1. Assigned to *Risk Category I*.
- 5921 2. Area of 600 square feet (56 m²) or less for *light-frame construction* or 400 square feet
5922 (37 m²) or less for other than *light-frame construction*.
- 5923 3. Eave height of 10 feet (3048 mm) or less.

5924 *Shallow foundations* shall not bear on frozen soil unless such frozen condition is of a
5925 permanent character.
5926

5927 ~~**1809.5.1 Frost protection at required exits.** Frost protection shall be provided at exterior
5928 landings for all required exits with outward swinging doors. Frost protection shall only be
5929 required to the extent necessary to ensure the unobstructed opening of the required *exit* doors.”~~
5930

5931 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5932 137. Subsection 2503.1, “Inspection,” of Section 2503, “Inspection,” of Chapter 25,
5933 “Gypsum Board, Gypsum Panel Products and Plaster,” of the 2021 International Building
5934 Code is amended to read as follows:

5935 **“2503.1 Inspection.** Lath, gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be inspected in
5936 accordance with Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the
5937 *Dallas City Code* [Section 110.3.5].”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5938 **New COG Amendment**

5939 138. **Section 2702, “Emergency and Standby Power Systems,” of Chapter 27,**
5940 **“Electrical,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subsection**
5941 **2702.5, “Designated Critical Operations Areas (DCOA),” to read as follows:**

5942 **Section 2702.5 Designated Critical Operations Areas (DCOA):** In areas within a facility or
5943 site requiring continuous operation for the purpose of public safety, emergency management,
5944 national security or business continuity, the power systems shall comply with NFPA 70 Article
5945 708.
5946

5947 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

5948 139. **Subsection [P] 2901.1, “Scope,” of Section 2901, “General,” of Chapter 29,**
5949 **“Plumbing Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

5950 **“[P] 2901.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter and the *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Plumbing Code*
5951 shall govern the design, construction, erection, installation of plumbing components, appliance,
5952 equipment and systems used in *buildings* and structures covered by this code. Toilet and bathing
5953 rooms shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1209. Private sewage disposal systems shall
5954 conform to the *Dallas Plumbing* [~~*International Private Sewage Disposal*~~] *Code*. The *Dallas*
5955 [~~*International*~~] *Fire Code*, [the ~~*International Private Sewage Disposal*~~ *Code*] and the *Dallas*
5956 [~~*International*~~] *Plumbing Code* shall govern the use and maintenance of plumbing components,
5957 appliances, equipment and systems. The *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Existing Building Code* and the
5958 *Dallas* [~~*International*~~] *Plumbing Code* shall govern the *alteration, repair, relocation, replacement*
5959 and *addition* of plumbing components, *appliances, equipment, and systems*. The provisions of this
5960 chapter are meant to work in coordination with the provisions of Chapter 4 of the *Dallas Plumbing*
5961 *Code*. Should any conflicts arise between the two chapters, the building official shall determine
5962 which provision applies.”
5963

5964 **Carryover Dallas/COG Amendment**

5965 140. **Subsection [P] 2902.1, “Minimum Number of Fixtures,” of Section 2902,**
5966 **“Minimum Plumbing Facilities,” of Chapter 29, “Plumbing Systems,” of the 2021**
5967 **International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

5968 **“[P] 2902.1 Minimum number of fixtures.** Plumbing fixtures shall be provided in the minimum
5969 number in accordance with this section and as shown in Table 2902.1 based on the actual use of
5970 the building or space. Uses not shown in Table 2902.1 shall be considered individually by the code
5971 official. The number of occupants shall be determined by this code.

5972
5973 1. Assembly occupancies: At least one drinking fountain must be provided at each floor level
5974 in an approved location.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

5975 **Exception:** A drinking fountain need not be provided in a drinking or dining establishment.
5976

5977 2. Groups A, B, F, I, M and S occupancies: Buildings, floors, tenant spaces or portions thereof
5978 where persons are employed must be provided with at least one water closet for each sex
5979 except as provided in Section 2902.2. Such water closet rooms in connection with food
5980 establishments where food is prepared, stored or served must have hand washing facilities
5981 therein or adjacent thereto. At least one drinking fountain must be provided at each floor
5982 level in an approved location.
5983

5984 3. Group E and R occupancies must be provided with fixtures as shown in Table 2902.1.
5985

5986 It is recommended, but not required, that the minimum number of fixtures provided also
5987 comply with the number shown in Table 2902.1. Types of occupancies not shown in Table 2902.1
5988 shall be considered individually by the building official. The number of occupants shall be
5989 determined by this code. Occupancy classification shall be determined in accordance with Chapter
5990 3.
5991

5992 **[P] 2902.1.1 Fixture calculations.** To determine the *occupant load* of each sex, the total
5993 *occupant load* shall be divided in half. To determine the required number of fixtures, the fixture
5994 ratio or ratios for each fixture type shall be applied to the *occupant load* of each sex in
5995 accordance with Table 2902.1. Fractional numbers resulting from applying the fixture ratios
5996 of Table 2902.1 shall be rounded up to the next whole number. For calculations involving
5997 multiple occupancies, such fractional numbers for each occupancy shall first be summed and
5998 then rounded up to the next whole number.
5999

6000 **Exceptions:**

- 6001
- 6002 1. The total *occupant load* shall not be required to be divided in half where *approved*
 - 6003 statistical data indicate a distribution of the sexes of other than 50 percent of each sex.
 - 6004 2. Where multiple-user facilities are designed to serve all genders, the minimum fixture
 - 6005 count shall be calculated 100 percent, based on total *occupant load*. In such multiple-
 - 6006 user facilities, each fixture type shall be in accordance with ICC A117.1 and each urinal
 - 6007 that is provided shall be located in a stall.
 - 6008 3. Distribution of the sexes is not required where single-user water closets and bathing
 - 6009 room fixtures are provided in accordance with Section 2902.1.2.
 - 6010

6011 **2902.1.1.1 Occupant load for minimum plumbing facilities.** In determining minimum
6012 plumbing facilities, the number of occupants for whom minimum plumbing facilities are
6013 provided must be computed in accordance with Section 1004.
6014

6015 **Exception:** Where state law or city ordinance limits the number of students per
6016 classroom, fixtures in primary and secondary schools may be provided on the basis of
6017 the maximum number of students allowed.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6018 [P] **2902.1.2 Single-user toilet and bathing room fixtures.** The plumbing fixtures located in
6019 single-user toilet and bathing rooms, including family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms
6020 that are required by Section 1110.2.1, shall contribute toward the total number of required
6021 plumbing fixtures for a building or tenant space. Single-user toilet and bathing rooms, and
6022 family or assisted-use toilet rooms and bathing rooms shall be identified as being available for
6023 use by all persons regardless of their sex.

6024 The total number of fixtures shall be permitted to be based on the required number of separate
6025 facilities or based on the aggregate of any combination of single-user or separate facilities.
6026

6027 [P] **2902.1.3 Lavatory distribution.** Where two or more toilet rooms are provided for each
6028 sex, the required number of lavatories shall be distributed proportionately to the required
6029 number of water closets.

6030 **Carryover COG Amendment**

6031 **2902.1.4 Additional fixtures for food preparation facilities.** In addition to the fixtures
6032 required in this chapter, all food service facilities must be provided with additional fixtures as
6033 required in this section.
6034

6035
6036 **2902.1.4.1 Hand washing lavatory.** At least one hand washing lavatory must be provided
6037 for use by employees that is accessible from food preparation, food dispensing and ware
6038 washing areas. Additional hand washing lavatories may be required based on convenience
6039 of use by employees.
6040

6041 **2902.1.4.2 Service sinks and floor sinks.** In new or remodeled food service
6042 establishments, at least one service sink or one floor sink must be provided so that it is
6043 conveniently located for the cleaning of mops or similar wet floor cleaning tools and for
6044 the disposal of mop water and similar liquid waste. The location of the service sinks or
6045 mop sinks must be approved by the health department.”
6046

6047 **New Dallas Amendment**

6048 141. Subsection [P] 2902.2, “Separate Facilities,” of Section 2902, “Minimum
6049 Plumbing Facilities,” of Chapter 29, “Plumbing Systems,” of the 2021 International Building

6050 **Code is amended to read as follows:**

6051 [P] **2902.2 Separate facilities.** Where plumbing fixtures are required, separate facilities shall be
6052 provided for each sex.

6053 **Exceptions:**
6054

6055 1. Separate facilities shall not be required for *dwelling units* and *sleeping units*.
6056

6057 2. Separate facilities shall not be required in structures or tenant spaces with a total *occupant load*,
6058 including both employees and customers, of 15 or fewer where the structure or tenant space
6059

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6060 is deemed to be equivalent to a building occupied by a single tenant and approved by the
6061 building official.
6062

6063 3. Separate facilities shall not be required in mercantile occupancies in which the
6064 maximum *occupant load* is 100 or fewer.

6065
6066 4. Separate facilities shall not be required in business occupancies in which the
6067 maximum *occupant load* is 25 or fewer.

6068
6069 5. Separate facilities shall not be required to be designated by sex where single-user toilets rooms
6070 are provided in accordance with Section 2902.1.2.
6071

6072 **Option A with new definition, Privacy area.**

6073 6. Separate facilities shall not be required where rooms having both water closets and lavatory
6074 fixtures are designed for use by both sexes and a privacy area for water closets are installed in
6075 accordance with Section 405.3.4 of the Dallas [International] Plumbing Code. Urinals shall be
6076 located in an area visually separated from the remainder of the facility or each urinal that is
6077 provided shall be located in a stall.

6078

6079 **Option B Delete and reserve for further study.**

6080 ~~6. Separate facilities shall not be required where rooms having both water closets and lavatory~~
6081 ~~fixtures are designed for use by both sexes and privacy for water closets are installed in~~
6082 ~~accordance with Section 405.3.4 of the International Plumbing Code. Urinals shall be located in~~
6083 ~~an area visually separated from the remainder of the facility or each urinal that is provided shall~~
6084 ~~be located in a stall.~~
6085

6086 **New Dallas amendment – similar to COG proposed Amendment**

6087 142. **Subsection 2902.6 “Small Occupancies,” of Section 2902, “Minimum**
6088 **Plumbing Facilities,” of Chapter 29, “Plumbing Systems,” of the 2021 International Building**

6089 **Code is amended to read as follows:**

6090 “[P] **2902.6 Small occupancies.** Drinking fountains shall not be required for a building
6091 occupied by a single tenant of M occupancy with an *occupant load* of [45] 100 or fewer, or a
6092 Group B Occupancy with an occupant load of 25 or fewer. This provision may be applied to
6093 other locations of Group M and Group occupancies if deemed to be equivalent to a building
6094 occupied by a single tenant and approved by the building official.”
6095

6096 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6097 143. **Section 2902, “Minimum Plumbing Facilities,” of Chapter 29, “Plumbing**
6098 **Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subsection**

6099 **2902.8, “Finish Material,” to read as follows:**
6100
6101

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6102 “2902.8 Finish material. Finish materials must comply with Section 1210.”
6103

6104 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6105 **144. Subsection 3001.3, “Referenced Standards,” of Section 3001, “General,” of**
6106 **Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
6107 **amended to read as follows:**

6108 **“3001.3 Referenced standards.** Except as otherwise provided for in this code, the design,
6109 construction, installation, *alteration*, repair and maintenance of elevators and conveying systems
6110 and their components shall conform to applicable standard specified in Table 3001.3 and ASCE
6111 24 for construction in *flood hazard areas* established in Section 1612.3.

6112 **Exception:** The appendices of ASME A17.1—2013 do not apply. The building owner is
6113 responsible for the safe operation and maintenance of each elevator, dumbwaiter, escalator or
6114 moving walk installation and shall cause periodic inspections, tests and maintenance to be
6115 made of such conveyances.”
6116
6117

6118 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6119 **145. Subsection 3001.4, “Accessibility,” of Section 3001, “General,” of Chapter 30,**
6120 **“Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to**
6121 **read as follows:**

6122 **“3001.4 Accessibility.** Passenger elevators required to be accessible or to serve as part of an
6123 *accessible means of egress* shall comply with Sections 1009 and 1109.8.

6124 **Exception:** Passenger elevators regulated under Article 9102, “Architectural Barriers,” of
6125 *Vernon’s Texas Civil Statutes* and the “Texas Accessibility Standards of the Architectural
6126 Barriers Act,” adopted by the Texas Commission of Licensing and Regulation pursuant to
6127 Article 9102 and built in accordance with state certified plans, including any variances granted
6128 by the state, will be deemed in compliance with the requirements of this chapter.”
6129
6130

6131 **Carryover COG Amendment**

6132 **146. Section 3002.1, “Hoistway Enclosure Protection,” of Section 3002, “Hoistway**
6133 **Enclosures,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International**
6134 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

6135 **“3002.1 Hoistway enclosure protection.** Elevator, dumbwaiter and other hoistway enclosures
6136 shall be *shaft enclosures* complying with Sections 712 and 713.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6137
6138

Exceptions:

6139
6140
6141

1. Elevators wholly located within atriums complying with Section 404 shall not require hoistway enclosure protection.

6142
6143
6144
6145

2. Elevators in open or enclosed parking garages that serve only the parking garage, and complying with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively, shall not require hoistway enclosure protection.

6146
6147
6148

3002.1.1 Opening protectives. Openings in hoistway enclosures shall be protected as required in Chapter 7.

6149
6150
6151
6152

Exception: The elevator car doors and the associated hoistway enclosure doors at the floor level designated for recall in accordance with Section 3003.2 shall be permitted to remain open during Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.

6153
6154
6155
6156

3002.1.2 Hardware. Hardware on opening protectives shall be of an *approved* type installed as tested, except that *approved* interlocks, mechanical locks and electric contacts, door and gate electric contacts and door-operating mechanisms shall be exempt from the fire test requirements.”

6157
6158
6159

Carryover COG and Dallas Amendments

147. Subsection 3005.4, “Machine Rooms, Control Rooms, Machinery Spaces, and

6160
6161

Control Spaces,” of Section 3005, “Machine Rooms,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:

6162
6163
6164

“3005.4 Machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces, and control spaces. The following room and spaces shall be enclosed with *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both:

6165
6166
6167
6168

1. Machine rooms
2. Control Rooms
3. Control Spaces
4. Machinery spaces outside of the hoistway enclosure

6169
6170
6171

The *fire-resistance rating* shall be not less than the required rating of the hoistway enclosure served by the machinery. Openings in the *fire barriers* shall be protected with assemblies having a *fire protection rating* not less than that required for the hoistway enclosure doors.

6172
6173
6174

Exceptions:

6175
6176
6177
6178

1. For other than fire service access elevators and occupant evacuation elevators, where machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces do not abut and

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 6179 have no openings to the hoistway enclosure they serve, the *fire barriers* constructed in
6180 accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with
6181 Section 711, or both, shall be permitted to be reduced to a 1-hour *fire-resistance* rating.
6182
- 6183 2. For other than fire service access elevators and occupant evacuation elevators, in
6184 buildings four *stories* or less above *grade plane* where machine room, machinery
6185 spaces, control rooms and control spaces do not abut and have no openings to the
6186 hoistway enclosure they serve, the machine room, machinery spaces, control rooms and
6187 control spaces are not required to be fire-resistance rated although the physical
6188 separation must be maintained from the rest of the building.
6189
- 6190 3. Elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control spaces completely
6191 located within atriums shall not require enclosure protection.
6192
- 6193 4. 2. Elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control spaces in open or
6194 enclosed parking garages that serve only the parking garage, shall not require enclosure
6195 protection.
6196
- 6197 5. Self-contained elevator and control systems as approved by the *building official*.
6198

Carryover COG and Dallas Amendments

6199

6200 **148. Section 3005, “Machine Rooms,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying**
6201 **Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a **new** Subsection**
6202 **3005.5, “Fire Protection in Machine Rooms, Control Rooms, Machinery Spaces and Control**
6203 **Spaces,” to read as follows:**
6204

6205 **“3005.5.1 Fire protection in machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control**
6206 **spaces.**
6207

6208 **3005.5.1.1 Automatic sprinkler system.** The building shall be equipped throughout with an
6209 automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, except as otherwise
6210 permitted by Section 903.3.1.1.1 and as prohibited by Section 3005.7.2.1.
6211

6212 **3005.5.1.1.1 Prohibited locations.** Automatic sprinklers shall not be installed in machine
6213 rooms, elevator machinery spaces, control rooms, control spaces and elevator hoistways.
6214

6215 **Exception:** Sprinklers may be installed at the bottom of the pit as required in ASME
6216 A17.1 and installed in accordance with NFPA 13.
6217

6218 **3005.5.1.1.2 Sprinkler system monitoring.** The sprinkler system shall have a sprinkler
6219 control valve supervisory switch and water-flow initiating device provided for each floor
6220 that is monitored by the building’s fire alarm system.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6221 **3005.5.1.2 Water protection.** An approved method to prevent water from infiltrating into the
6222 hoistway enclosure from the operation of the automatic sprinkler system outside the elevator
6223 lobby shall be provided.
6224

6225 **3005.5.1.3 Shunt trip.** Means for elevator shutdown in accordance with Section 3005.5 shall
6226 not be installed.
6227

6228 **3005.5.1.4 Detection.** The elevator machine room, machine room, machinery space, control
6229 room, control space or hoistway of traction elevators must be protected by smoke detectors or
6230 other automatic fire detection installed in accordance with NFPA 72.”
6231

6232 **Carryover COG Amendment**

6233 **149. Section 3005, “Machine Rooms,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying**
6234 **Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Subsection**
6235 **3005.7 “Storage,” to read as follows:**
6236

6237 **“3005.7 Storage.** Storage shall not be allowed within the elevator machine room, control room,
6238 machinery spaces and/or control spaces and shall provide approved signage at each entry to the
6239 above listed locations stating: “No Storage Allowed.”
6240

6241 **Carryover COG Amendment**

6242 **150. Subsection 3006.2, “Hoistway Opening Protection Required,” of Section 3006,**
6243 **“Elevator Lobbies and Hoistway Opening Protection,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and**
6244 **Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

6245 **“3006.2 Hoistway opening protection required.** Elevator hoistway door openings shall be
6246 protected in accordance with Section 3006.3 where an elevator hoistway connects more than three
6247 stories, is required to be enclosed within a shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 712.1.1 and
6248 any of the following conditions apply:
6249

- 6250 1. The building is not protected throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* in accordance
6251 with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
6252
- 6253 2. The building contains a Group I-1 Condition 2 occupancy.
6254
- 6255 3. The building contains a Group I-2 occupancy.
6256
- 6257 4. The building contains a Group I-3 occupancy.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6258 5. The building is a high rise and the elevator hoistway is more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) in
6259 height. The height of the hoistway shall be measured from the lowest floor at or below
6260 grade to the highest floor at or above grade of the floors served by the hoistway.
6261

6262 **Exceptions:**

- 6263
- 6264 1. Protection of elevator hoistway door openings is not required where the elevator serves
6265 only open parking garages in accordance with Section 406.5.
6266
 - 6267 2. Protection of elevator hoistway door openings is not required at the level(s) of exit
6268 discharge, provided the level(s) of exit discharge is equipped with an *automatic*
6269 *sprinkler system* in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
6270
 - 6271 3. Enclosed elevator lobbies and protection of elevator hoistway door openings are not
6272 required on levels where the elevator hoistway opens to the exterior.”
6273

6274 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6275 **151. Subsection 3007.1, “General,” of Section 3007, “Fire Service Access Elevator,”**
6276 **of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
6277 **is amended to read as follows:**

6278 **“3007.1 General.** Where required by Section 403.6.1, every floor of the building shall be served
6279 by fire service access elevators complying with Sections 3007.1 through 3007.9. Except as
6280 modified in this section, fire service access elevators shall be installed in accordance with this
6281 chapter and ASME A17.1/CSA B44. A fire service access elevator must be one that is accessible
6282 for general public use. This requirement may be satisfied by an elevator for freight, service or
6283 passengers which also meets this condition.”
6284

6285 **New COG Amendment**

6286 **152. Subsection 3007.3, “Water Protection,” of Section 3007, “Fire Service Access**
6287 **Elevator,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International**
6288 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

6289 **“3007.3 Water Protection.** Water from the operation of an *automatic sprinkler system* outside
6290 the ~~enclosed~~ lobby shall be prevented from infiltrating into the hoistway enclosure in accordance
6291 with an *approved* method.”

6292 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6294 **153. Subsection 3007.6, “Fire Service Access Elevator Lobby,” of Section 3007,**
6295 **“Fire Service Access Elevator,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the**
6296 **2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

6297 **“3007.6 Fire service access elevator lobby.** The fire service access elevator shall open into a fire
6298 service access elevator lobby in accordance with Sections 3007.6.1 through 3007.6.5. Egress is
6299 permitted through the elevator lobby in accordance with Item 1 of Section 1016.2. A fire service
6300 access elevator lobby must be one that is accessible for general public use.
6301

6302 **Exception:** Where a fire service access elevator has two entrances onto a floor, the second
6303 entrance shall be permitted to open into an elevator lobby in accordance with Section 3006.3.
6304

6305 **3007.6.1 Access to interior exit stairway or ramp.** The fire service access elevator lobby
6306 shall have direct access from the enclosed elevator lobby to an enclosure for an *interior exit*
6307 *stairway* or *ramp*.
6308

6309 **Exception:** Access to an *interior exit stairway* or *ramp* shall be permitted to be through a
6310 protected path of travel that has a level of fire protection not less than the elevator lobby
6311 enclosure. The protected path shall be separated from the enclosed elevator lobby through
6312 an opening protected by a smoke and draft control assembly in accordance Section 716.5.3.
6313

6314 **3007.6.2 Lobby enclosure.** The fire service access elevator lobby shall be enclosed with a
6315 *smoke barrier* having a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour, except that lobby
6316 doorways shall comply with Section 3007.6.3.
6317

6318 **Exception:** Enclosed fire service access elevator lobbies are not required at the *levels of*
6319 *exit discharge*.
6320

6321 **3007.6.3 Lobby doorways.** Other than doors to the hoistway, elevator control room or elevator
6322 control space, each doorway to a fire service access elevator lobby shall be provided with a
6323 *3/4-hour fire door assembly* complying with Section 716.5. The *fire door assembly* shall comply
6324 with the smoke and draft control door assembly requirements of Section 716.5.3.1 with the UL
6325 1784 test conducted without the artificial bottom seal.
6326

6327 **3007.6.4 Lobby size.** Regardless of the number of fire service access elevators served by the
6328 same elevator lobby, the enclosed fire service access elevator lobby shall be not less than 150
6329 square feet (14 m²) in an area with a dimension of not less than 8 feet (2440 mm).
6330

6331 **3007.6.5 Fire service access elevator symbol.** A pictorial symbol of a standardized design
6332 designating which elevators are fire service access elevators shall be installed on each side of
6333 the hoistway door frame on the portion of the frame at right angles to the fire service access
6334 elevator lobby. The fire service access elevator symbol shall be designed as shown in Figure
6335 3007.6.5 and shall comply with the following:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 6336 1. The fire service access elevator symbol shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in height.
- 6337
- 6338 2. The helmet shall contrast with the background, with either a light helmet on a dark
- 6339 background or a dark helmet on a light background.
- 6340
- 6341 3. The vertical center line of the fire service access elevator symbol shall be centered on
- 6342 the hoistway door frame. Each symbol shall be not less than 78 inches (1981 mm), and
- 6343 not more than 84 inches (2134 mm) above the finished floor at the threshold.”
- 6344

6345 New COG Amendment

6346 **154. Subsection 3008.3, “Water Protection,” of Section 3008, “Occupant evacuation**

6347 **Elevators,” of Chapter 30, “Elevators and Conveying Systems,” of the 2021 International**

6348 **Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

6349

6350 **“3007.3 Water Protection.** Water from the operation of an *automatic sprinkler system* outside

6351 the ~~enclosed~~ lobby shall be prevented from infiltrating into the hoistway enclosure in accordance

6352 with an *approved* method.”

6353 Carryover Dallas Amendment

6354 **155. Subsection 3102.1, “General,” of Section 3102, “Membrane Structures,” of**

6355

6356 **Chapter 31, “Special Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to**

6357 **read as follows:**

6358 **“3102.1 General.** The provisions of Sections 3102.1 through 3102.8 shall apply to air-supported,

6359 air-inflated, membrane-covered cable, membrane-covered frame and *tensile membrane structures*,

6360 collectively known as membrane structures, erected for a period of 31 consecutive [~~180~~] days or

6361 longer. Those erected for a shorter period of time shall comply with the *Dallas* [~~International~~]

6362 *Fire Code*. Membrane structures covering water storage facilities, water clarifiers, water treatment

6363 plants, sewage treatment plants, greenhouses and similar facilities not used for human occupancy

6364 are required to meet only the requirements of Sections 3102.3.1 and 3102.7. Membrane structures

6365 erected on a building, balcony, deck or other structure for any period of time shall comply with

6366 this section. A tent, other fabric, membrane structure or portion of a structure intended to be in

6367 place temporarily must comply with the provisions of Chapter 39.

6368

6369 **3102.1.1 Tensile membrane structures and air-supported structures.** Tensile membrane

6370 structures and air-supported structures, including permanent and temporary structures, shall be

6371 designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 55. The provisions in Sections 3102.3

6372 through 3106.2 shall apply.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6373 **3102.1.2 Other code provisions.** Except as specifically required by this section, membrane
6374 structures must meet any other applicable provisions of this code.
6375

6376 **Exception:** Membrane structures need not comply with the provisions of this section where
6377 they completely comply with other applicable provisions of this code.
6378

6379 **3102.1.3 Permeable covers.** For purposes of this chapter, permeable covers are considered
6380 floor area.
6381

6382 **Exception:** Open-grid covers in which the openings are ¼ inch (6.4 mm) or larger in the
6383 least dimension and when such openings constitute at least 75 percent of the area of the
6384 covering material.”
6385

6386 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6387 **156. Subsection 3103.1, “General,” of Section 3103, “Temporary Structures,” of**
6388 **Chapter 31, “Special Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code is amended to**
6389 **read as follows:**

6390 **“3103.1 General.** The provisions of Sections 3103.1 through 3103.4 shall apply to structures
6391 erected for a period of less than 31 [~~180~~] days. *Special event structures*, tents, umbrella structures
6392 and other membrane structures erected for a period of less than 31 consecutive [~~180~~] days shall
6393 comply with the Dallas [~~International~~] Fire Code and Chapter 39 of this code. Those erected for
6394 a longer period of time shall comply with applicable sections of this code.
6395

6396 **3103.1.1 Conformance.** Temporary structures and uses shall conform to the structural
6397 strength, fire safety, *means of egress*, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements
6398 of this code as necessary to ensure public health, safety and general welfare.

6399 **Updated per June 13, 2022 amendment.**

6400 **3103.1.2 Permit required.** Temporary structures shall require permits as per Chapter 52,
6401 “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Codes.”
6402

6403 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6404 **157. Subsection 3104.1, “General,” of Section 3104, “Pedestrian Walkways and**
6405 **Tunnels,” of Chapter 31, “Special Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
6406 **amended to read as follows:**

6407 **“3104.1 General.** This section shall apply to connections between buildings such as *pedestrian*
6408 *walkways* or tunnels, located at, above or below grade level, that are used as a means of travel by
6409 persons. Except for determination of the building fire area in Section 511.1.2, [~~The~~] *pedestrian*
6410 *walkways* shall not contribute to the *building area* or the number of *stories* or height of connected
6411 buildings.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6412 **3104.1.1 Application.** Pedestrian walkways shall be designed and constructed in accordance
6413 with Sections 3104.2 through 3104.9. Tunnels shall be designed and constructed in accordance
6414 with Sections 3104.2 and 3104.10.”

6415 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6416 **158. Chapter 31, “Special Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
6417
6418 **is amended by adding a new Section 3116, “Fixed Guideway Transit System Stations,” to**
6419 **read as follows:**

6420 **“SECTION 3116** 6421 **FIXED GUIDEWAY TRANSIT SYSTEM STATIONS**

6422
6423 **3116.1 General.** Where provided, fixed guideway transit system stations must be installed in
6424 accordance with NFPA 130.

6425
6426 **Exception: Means of egress from fixed guideway transit system must comply with Chapter**
6427 **10.”**
6428

6429 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6430 **159. Chapter 31, “Special Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
6431
6432 **is amended by adding a new Section 3117, “Storage Racks,” to read as follows:**

6433 **“SECTION 3117** 6434 **STORAGE RACKS**

6435
6436
6437 **3117.1 Applicability.** The provisions of this section apply to all parts of buildings and structures
6438 that contain bin box storage or shelf storage rack systems.
6439

6440 **3117.2 Definitions.** The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this section and as
6441 used elsewhere in this code, have the meanings shown herein.
6442

6443 **BIN BOX STORAGE.** Storage in five-sided boxes with an open face on each aisle. Boxes are
6444 self-supporting or supported by a structure designed so that little or no horizontal or vertical space
6445 exists around boxes.
6446

6447 **RACK SYSTEMS.** Structures designed to store materials and products.
6448

6449 **SHELF STORAGE.** Storage on structures equal to or less than 30 inches (752 mm) deep with
6450 shelves a maximum of 2 feet (610 mm) apart vertically and separated by minimum 30-inch (762
6451 mm) aisles.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6452 **3117.3 Rack systems.** Bin box storage or shelf storage rack systems, including their aisles and
6453 stairs, must not contribute to the number of stories as regulated by Section 503 or to the number
6454 of mezzanines as regulated by Section 505 where meeting all of the following conditions:
6455

- 6456 1. The building, including the rack systems, is equipped throughout with an automatic
6457 sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.
6458
- 6459 2. The rack systems, aisles, and stairs are not part of the structural framework of the building.
6460
- 6461 3. The rack systems and stairs are of noncombustible materials. The aisles are of expanded
6462 metal or metal grid.
6463
- 6464 4. The structural design of the rack systems, aisles, and stairs, complies with Chapter 16 and
6465 Section 2209.
6466
- 6467 5. The aisles and stairways are designed to comply with the means of egress provisions of
6468 Chapter 10.
6469

6470 **3117.4 Other requirements.** In addition, rack storage in high-piled combustible storage areas
6471 must comply with Chapter 32 of the Dallas Fire Code.”
6472

6473 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6474 **160. Subsection 3201.4, “Drainage,” of Section 3201, “General,” of Chapter 32,**
6475 **“Encroachments Into the Public Right-of-Way,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
6476 **amended to read as follows:**

6477 **“3201.4 Drainage.** Drainage water collected from a roof, awning, canopy or marquee, and
6478 condensate from mechanical equipment shall not flow over a public walking surface except as
6479 permitted by Section 1101 of the Dallas Plumbing Code.”
6480

6481 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6482 **161. Section 3303, “Demolition,” of Chapter 33, “Safeguards During**
6483 **Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code is deleted and replaced with a new**
6484 **Section 3303, “Demolition,” to read as follows:**

6486 **“SECTION 3303**
6487 **DEMOLITION**

6489 **3303.1 General.** Demolition activities are regulated under Chapter 40 of this code.”
6490

6491 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6492 162. **Subsection 3310.1, “Stairways Required,” of Section 3310, “Means of Egress,”**
6493 **of Chapter 33, “Safeguards During Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code**
6494 **is amended to read as follows:**

6495 **“3310.1 Stairways required.** Where a building construction exceeds 35 [40] feet (10 668 [~~12 192~~]
6496 mm) in height above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, a temporary or permanent
6497 *stairway* shall be provided. As construction progresses, such as *stairway* shall be extended to
6498 within one floor of the highest point of construction having secured decking or flooring.”

6499 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6500 163. **Subsection [F] 3311.1, “Where Required,” of Section 3311, “Standpipes,” of**
6501 **Chapter 33, “Safeguards During Construction,” of the 2021 International Building Code is**
6502 **amended to read as follows:**

6505 **“[F] 3311.1 Where required.** In buildings required to have standpipes by Section 905.3.1, no
6506 fewer than one standpipe shall be provided for use during construction. Such standpipes shall be
6507 installed prior to construction exceeding 35 [40] feet (10 668 [~~12 192~~] mm) in height above the
6508 lowest level of fire department vehicle access. Such standpipes shall be provided with fire
6509 department hose connections at locations adjacent to *stairways* complying with Section 3310.1.
6510 As construction progresses to within one floor of the highest point of construction having secured
6511 decking or flooring.”

6512 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

6513 164. **The introductory paragraph to Chapter 35, “Referenced Standards,” of the**
6514 **2021 International Building Code is amended to read as follows:**

6516 “About this chapter: The International Building Code contains numerous references to standards
6517 promulgated by other organization that are used to provide requirements for materials and methods
6518 of construction. This chapter contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in
6519 this code. These standards, in essence, are part of this code to the extent of the reference to the
6520 standard.

6521 This chapter lists the standards that area referenced in various sections of this document. The
6522 standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification,
6523 the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard.
6524 The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Section 101.4 of Chapter 52,
6525 “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the *Dallas City Code* [~~102.4~~].”

6526 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6570 167. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter
6571 **36, “Signs,” to read as follows:**

“CHAPTER 36 SIGNS

SECTION 3601 PERMITS

6572 **3601.1 General.** The building official shall receive applications, review construction documents
6573 and issue permits for the erection, and alteration, demolition and moving of signs and structures,
6574 inspect the premises for which such permits have been issued and enforce compliance with the
6575 provisions of this code in accordance with Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures of the
6576 Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Code.
6577

SECTION 3602 DEFINITIONS

6585 **3602.1 Definitions.** For the purposes of this chapter, definitions contained in the *Dallas*
6586 *Development Code* shall be used.
6587

SECTION 3603 ELECTRICAL

6588 **3603.1 General.** Every sign in which electrical wiring and connections are used shall comply with
6589 the requirements of the *Dallas Electrical Code*. In addition, each illuminated sign shall bear the
6590 Underwriters Laboratory® label or be built to comply with Underwriters Laboratory®
6591 requirements.
6592

6593 **3603.2 Utility lines.** No sign may be erected nearer than 2 feet (609.6 mm) from any telephone
6594 cable, electrical street light standard or electrical power distribution line when voltage between
6595 conductors is less than 300 volts. If the voltage between conductors is 300 volts or greater,
6596 clearance shall be maintained in accordance with the *Dallas Electrical Code*.
6597

6598 **3603.3 Protection.** Wire glass, safety glass, a locked box of metal or wood, or any other approved
6599 method shall protect an electrical device within reach of persons on public property.
6600

SECTION 3604 DESIGN

6601 **3604.1 General.** Every sign and its supports shall be designed as specified for a building in this
6602 code. All supports shall be designed to transfer lateral forces to the foundations. An attached sign
6603 shall be designed to transmit the dead and lateral loads through the structural frame of the building
6604

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6613 in such a manner as to not overstress any element.
6614

6615 **3604.2 Wind pressure.** Every sign and its supports shall be designed to withstand a minimum
6616 allowable resultant wind pressure of 30 pounds per square foot.
6617

6618 **3604.3 Dead load resisting moment.** The overturning moment produced from lateral forces may
6619 in no case exceed two-thirds of the dead load resisting moment. Uplift shall be adequately resisted
6620 by proper anchorage to the ground or to the structural frame of the building. The weight
6621 superimposed over footings or supports may be used in determining the dead load resisting
6622 moment.
6623

6624 **3604.4 Allowable stress.** The design of wood, concrete, steel or aluminum members shall conform
6625 to the requirements of this code. Loads, both vertical and horizontal, exerted on the soil shall not
6626 produce stresses exceeding those specified in this code.
6627

6628 The working stresses of wire rope and its fastening shall not exceed 25 percent of the ultimate
6629 strength.
6630

6631 Working stresses for wind loads combined with dead loads may be increased as specified in
6632 this code.

SECTION 3605 **CONSTRUCTION**

6633
6634
6635
6636 **3605.1 General.** Every sign and its supports shall be built, constructed and erected in conformance
6637 with the requirements of all applicable laws and ordinances.
6638

6639 **3605.2 Materials.** Materials of construction for each sign and its supports shall be of the quality,
6640 type and grade as specified for a building in this code. In the absence of detailed requirements,
6641 material shall conform to the following:
6642

6643 1. Structural steel shall be of such quality as to conform to Chapter 22. Secondary members
6644 of a sign in contact with, or directly supporting the display surface may be formed of light
6645 gauge steel, provided the members are designed in accordance with the specifications of
6646 the design of light gauge steel as specified in Chapter 22 and are galvanized. Secondary
6647 members, when formed integrally with the display surface, shall not be less than No. 24
6648 gauge in thickness. When not formed integrally with the display surface, the minimum
6649 thickness of hot-rolled steel members furnishing structural support for a sign shall be ¼
6650 inch, except that if galvanized, such members shall not be less than 1/8 inch thick. Steel
6651 pipes shall be of such quality as to conform to Chapter 22. Steel members may be connected
6652 with a galvanized bolt, provided the connection is adequate to transfer the stresses in the
6653 members.
6654

6655 2. Anchors and supports, when of wood and embedded in the soil or within 6 inches (152.4
6656 mm) of the soil, shall be of all heartwood of a durable species or shall be pressure treated
6657 with an approved preservative. Such members shall be marked or branded by an approved

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6658 agency.
6659

6660 3. Glass thickness and area limitations are as required in Chapter 24.
6661

6662 4. Approved plastics may be used as set forth in Chapter 26 for plastic veneer. Location, size
6663 and spacing shall be as set forth in Chapter 26 for glazing or veneer.
6664

6665 5. Awnings and marquees that also serve as signs shall be constructed of materials as required
6666 by Sections 3105 and 3106.
6667

6668 6. Attached signs on Type I or Type II buildings, other than those specified in Section 3605.2(5),
6669 and detached signs located within 3 feet (914.4 mm) of any Type I or Type II building or
6670 within 3 feet (914.4 mm) of any property line, exclusive of a public way, shall be
6671 constructed of noncombustible materials.
6672

6673 **3605.3 Height clearance.** Except for an attached sign which does not project more than 2 inches
6674 (50.8 mm) from the building facade, every sign shall have the following minimum clearance from
6675 the surface immediately below:
6676

6677 1. Ten feet (3048 mm) when located above a sidewalk.
6678

6679 2. Twelve feet (3657.6 mm) when located above a parking lot, parking space, driveway or
6680 head-in parking.
6681

6682 3. Fourteen feet (4267.2 mm) when located above a fire lane.
6683

6684 **3605.4 Location.** Location of a sign shall be in accordance with the *Dallas Development Code*.
6685

6686 **3605.5 Clearance from fire escapes, exits or standpipes.** No sign or its supports may be erected
6687 in a manner that will interfere in any way with the use of any fire escape, exit or standpipe. No
6688 sign or its supports may be attached to a standpipe or fire escape.
6689

6690 **3605.6 Obstruction of openings in buildings.** No sign or its supports may obstruct any required
6691 openings to such an extent that light or ventilation is reduced below that required.
6692

6693 **3605.7 Weatherproofing.** Every sign shall be constructed so as to prevent the accumulation of
6694 water.
6695

6696 **3605.8 Sign maintenance.** The owner of any premises upon which a sign is erected shall maintain
6697 the sign and its supports. If any sign becomes dangerous to life, limb or property; or an obstruction
6698 to the use of any sidewalk or roadway; or interferes with the operation of the fire department, it is
6699 the responsibility of the owner of the premises or the owner's agent to remove or repair the sign.”
6700

6701 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6745 of the bond by the surety.
6746

6747 **3702.4 Indemnification.** An applicant shall execute, and file with the *building official*, a written
6748 agreement to indemnify the city and its officers, agents and employees against all claims of injury
6749 or damage to persons or property, whether public or private, arising out of the moving of a
6750 structure.
6751

6752 **3702.5 Established place of business.** An applicant is required to maintain a regular and
6753 established place of business at a location where a building moving company is not prohibited by
6754 municipal ordinance and for which every license, tax permit and certificate of occupancy, if
6755 required by law, has been issued and is in force.
6756

6757 **3702.6 Approval or denial of application.** When a complete application for a license or a license
6758 renewal has been filed with the *building official* in proper form, the *building official* shall, within
6759 a period of 30 days after the date of filing, approve or deny the application. If the application is
6760 denied, the *building official* shall send to the applicant by certified mail to the designated address
6761 shown on the application, return receipt requested, a written statement setting forth the reasons for
6762 the denial.
6763

6764 **3702.7 Additional information.** The *building official* may, at any time, require additional
6765 information of a licensee or an applicant related to an application.
6766

SECTION 3703 **FEE**

6770 **3703.1 Fee.** The annual fee for a building mover's license is \$260 for each moving company. The
6771 fee for issuing a duplicate license for one lost, destroyed or mutilated is \$25. Fees are payable to
6772 the *building official* upon issuance of a license. No refund of a fee will be made.
6773

SECTION 3704 **LICENSE ISSUANCE; EXPIRATION; NON-TRANSFERABILITY**

6774
6775
6776
6777 **3704.1 License qualifications.** The *building official* shall issue a license to engage in the business
6778 of moving structures to all applicants complying with the provisions of this chapter. No license
6779 authorizing the moving of structures on the streets of the city may be issued unless all requirements
6780 of this section are met.
6781

6782 **3704.1.1 Insurance.** The applicant shall procure and keep in full force and effect commercial
6783 general liability insurance and comprehensive automobile liability insurance written by an
6784 insurance company approved by the State of Texas and acceptable to the city and issued in the
6785 standard form approved by the Texas Department of Insurance. All provisions of the policy
6786 shall be acceptable to the city. The insured provisions of the policy shall name the city and its
6787 officers and employees as additional insureds. The coverage types and limits set forth in this
6788 section shall be maintained at all times during the term of the license.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6789 **3704.1.1.1 Commercial general liability insurance.** The commercial general liability
6790 insurance shall provide combined single limits of liability for bodily injury and property
6791 damage of not less than \$500,000 for each occurrence, or the equivalent, and include
6792 coverage for premises operations, independent contractors, products/completed operations,
6793 personal injury, contractual liability and medical payments.
6794

6795 **3704.1.1.2 Comprehensive automobile liability insurance.** The comprehensive
6796 automobile liability insurance shall provide combined single limits of liability for bodily
6797 injury and property damage of not less than \$500,000 for each occurrence, or the
6798 equivalent, for each motor vehicle used by the licensee.
6799

6800 **3704.1.1.3 Cancellation provisions.** Each insurance policy shall include a cancellation
6801 provision in which the insurance company is required to notify the *building official* in
6802 writing not fewer than 30 days before canceling, failing to renew or making a material
6803 change to the policy.
6804

6805 **3704.1.2 Indemnification agreement.** The applicant shall execute a written agreement to
6806 indemnify the city and its officers and employees against all claims of injury or damage to
6807 persons or property arising out of the moving of a structure by the licensee.
6808

6809 **3704.1.3 Identification of structure, vehicles and equipment.** The name of the applicant
6810 shall be painted, stenciled or otherwise permanently affixed in clearly legible letters not less
6811 than 3 inches (76.2 mm) high on all structures being moved and on all vehicles, trailers,
6812 lowboys, beams or other equipment to be used.
6813

6814 **3704.2 Expiration of license.** A building mover's license expires one year from the date of
6815 issuance.
6816

6817 **3704.3 Nontransferability of license.** A building mover's license is not assignable or transferable.
6818

SECTION 3705

LICENSE-DISPLAY, DUPLICATES, RENEWAL AND CHANGES

6822 **3705.1 License display.** Each license issued pursuant to this chapter shall be posted and kept in
6823 a conspicuous place in the building mover's establishment.
6824

6825 **3705.2 License duplicates.** A duplicate license may be issued for one lost, destroyed or mutilated
6826 upon application on a form prescribed by the *building official*. Each duplicate license shall have
6827 the word "duplicate" stamped across its face.
6828

6829 **3705.3 License renewal.** A licensee shall apply for renewal of a building mover's license at least
6830 30 days before expiration of the license.
6831

6832 **3705.4 Notification of changes.** Every licensee shall, within 10 days after a partial change of
6833 control in ownership or management, or a change of address or trade name, notify the *building*

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6834 official of the changes. If complete ownership of a building moving company is changed, the new
6835 owner shall apply for a new building mover's license in accordance with Section 3702.
6836

6837

SECTION 3706

6838

REFUSAL TO ISSUE OR RENEW A LICENSE

6839

6840 **3706.1 Refusal to issue or renew license.** The *building official* shall refuse to issue or renew a
6841 building mover's license for any of the following reasons:
6842

6843 1. The making of any false statement as to a material matter in an application for a license or
6844 license renewal, or in a hearing concerning the license.
6845

6846 2. Conviction of the licensee, applicant or any employee while in the scope of employment
6847 with the licensee or applicant for a violation of this chapter.
6848

6849 3. Revocation of a license, pursuant to this chapter, of the applicant, or of any proprietor,
6850 partner or corporate officer in a building moving company, within one year preceding
6851 application unless the one year is specifically waived by the Building Inspection Advisory,
6852 Examining and Appeals Board.
6853

6854 4. Failure of the licensee to obtain the bond and insurance required by this chapter for a
6855 building mover's license.
6856

6857

SECTION 3707

6858

LICENSE REVOCATION

6859

6860 **3707.1 Grounds for revocation.** The *building official* shall revoke a building mover's license for
6861 any one or more of the following reasons:
6862

6863 1. The making of any false statement as to a material matter in an application for a license or
6864 license renewal, or in a hearing concerning the license.
6865

6866 2. Conviction of the licensee, or any employee while in the scope of employment with the
6867 licensee, of a violation of Section 3701, 3704, 3710, 3711, 3712, 3713, 3714, 3715 or 3716.
6868

6869 3. Failure of the licensee to maintain the bond and insurance required by this chapter for a
6870 building mover's license.
6871

6872 **3707.2 Notice of revocation.** The *building official* shall send written notice of revocation to the
6873 licensee by certified mail, return receipt requested, setting forth the reason for, and the effective
6874 date of, the revocation.
6875

6876

SECTION 3708

6877

APPEAL

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6878 **3708.1 Appeal rights and procedures.** If the *building official* refuses to approve the issuance of
6879 an original license or the renewal of a license to any applicant, or revokes the license issued to any
6880 licensee under this chapter, this action is final subject to the licensee's right, within 10 days after
6881 the receipt of written notice of the action, to file with the Building Inspection Advisory, Examining
6882 and Appeals board a written appeal. The *building official* shall cause all documents constituting
6883 the records upon which the action was appealed to be forwarded to the board. The hearing before
6884 the board shall be public and any interested party may appear in person, by agent or by legal
6885 counsel. The board shall, within 30 days after the appeal is filed, hear and consider all the evidence
6886 in support of or against the action appealed and render a decision either sustaining or reversing the
6887 action. The board shall have authority to sustain, reverse or modify the action appealed. The
6888 decision of the board is final as to administrative remedies in the city.
6889

6890 **3708.2 Other remedies not affected by appeal.** Nothing in this section is deemed to abolish or
6891 impair remedies of the city or its officers, agents or employees relative to the removal or demolition
6892 of any structure which is deemed to be dangerous, unsafe, unsanitary, unfit for human habitation,
6893 constructed or maintained in violation of the *Dallas Development Code*, or so located as to be a
6894 hazard to the traveling public or to constitute a public nuisance.
6895

6896 **SECTION 3709** 6897 **POWERS AND DUTIES OF THE BUILDING OFFICIAL** 6898

6899 **3709.1 General.** In addition to the powers and duties elsewhere prescribed in this code, the
6900 *building official* is required to:
6901

- 6902 1. Administer and enforce all provisions of this chapter;
- 6903
- 6904 2. Keep records of all licenses issued or revoked; and
- 6905
- 6906 3. Adopt such rules and regulations, not inconsistent with this chapter, with respect to the
6907 form and content of applications for licenses, the investigation of applicants, and other
6908 matters incidental or appropriate to the *building official's* powers and duties that may be
6909 necessary for the proper administration and enforcement of this chapter.
6910

6911 **SECTION 3710** 6912 **PERMIT TO MOVE A STRUCTURE** 6913

6914 **3710.1 Permit required.** The licensee shall obtain from the *building official* a separate permit for
6915 each move of a structure or portion of a structure along, across or over the public way, except that
6916 a single permit may be issued to authorize the moving of a structure in more than one piece, if all
6917 portions of the structure are moved at the same time. Permits for moving structures along the public
6918 ways may only be issued to licensed building movers.
6919

6920 **3710.2 Permit application.** Application for each permit shall be made on a form provided for
6921 that purpose. The moving permit fee required in Section 3716 shall accompany the application

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6922 and, if applicable, the inspection fee required in Section 3711, and shall contain the following
6923 information:
6924

- 6925 1. A description of the structure to be moved.
- 6926
- 6927 2. The overall height, width and length of the structure.
- 6928
- 6929 3. The present location of the structure.
- 6930
- 6931 4. The location to which the structure is to be moved.
- 6932
- 6933 5. All other information that may be required.
- 6934

6935 **3710.3 Other permits.**

6936

6937 **3710.3.1 Building permit and site plan.** Except when a structure is moved to a location
6938 outside the city limits or to an approved temporary storage site, each application for a moving
6939 permit shall be accompanied by an application for a building permit, along with a site plan
6940 showing the location of the moved structure on the new site, signed by the owner of the site to
6941 which the structure is being moved, stating the use to which the structure is to be put, stating
6942 that the destination site is properly zoned for the proposed use and describing the work to be
6943 done to repair or remodel the structure.
6944

6945 **3710.3.2 Requirements of building permit.** The building permit shall require the following:
6946

- 6947 1. The structure shall be completely moved to the new site within 30 days after the date
6948 the moving permit is issued.
- 6949
- 6950 2. Work shall be started on the structure within 10 days after the date the structure arrives
6951 at the new site.
- 6952
- 6953 3. The structure shall be placed on an approved permanent foundation within 60 days after
6954 the date the moving permit is issued.
- 6955
- 6956 4. Within 100 days after the date the moving permit is issued, the exterior of the structure
6957 shall be made to comply with this code and all other applicable city ordinances and all
6958 exterior construction work shall be completed, including, but not limited to, the
6959 completion of all site work, paving, grading and site cleanup and the installation, repair
6960 and replacement of all siding, roofing, doors, windows, trim, paint, steps, porches and
6961 other work visible from the street or any neighboring property.
- 6962
- 6963 5. Completion of interior work on the structure shall proceed in compliance with other
6964 provisions of this code and other applicable city ordinances.
- 6965

6966 **3710.3.3 Failure to comply.** Failure to comply with the requirements of Section 3710.3.2 may

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

6967 result in the revocation of the building permit and the structure will then become subject to the
6968 provisions of Chapter 27, “Minimum Urban Rehabilitation Standards,” of the *Dallas City*
6969 *Code*, as amended.
6970

6971 **3710.4 Issuance, expiration and renewal.**

6972
6973 **3710.4.1 Issuance.** Upon receipt of an application for a moving permit, the structure to be
6974 moved shall be inspected, and if it is found to be in conformity with, or can be made to comply
6975 with, the requirements of this code and other applicable ordinances, a moving permit shall be
6976 issued upon payment of the fee required by this chapter. A moving permit shall be issued for
6977 each move to the destination site. If moving of the structure will violate any provision of this
6978 chapter, the *building official* shall not issue the moving permit, and the structure may not be
6979 moved.
6980

6981 **3710.4.2 Expiration.** A moving permit expires two years after the date the permit is issued.
6982

6983 **3710.4.3 Renewal.** A moving permit may be renewed one time for a period not to exceed 30
6984 additional days if written application by the building mover and payment of a \$100 renewal
6985 fee is received by the *building official* prior to the original permit expiration date. A moving
6986 permit that has expired may not be renewed except by application for a new permit and
6987 payment of all required permit fees.
6988

6989 **3710.5 Temporary storage.** A person who stores within the city a structure which has been moved
6990 from its original construction site to a location, without placing the structure on an approved
6991 foundation with anchorage and support, shall provide a solid fence or wall with plant screening
6992 surrounding the storage area which complies with provisions of the *Dallas Development Code*
6993 relating to storage of structures. This provision does not prohibit the location of new structures on
6994 bona fide sales lots displaying examples of workmanship and appearance of structures to be sold
6995 and constructed on individual remote sites.
6996

6997 **3710.6 Unlawful acts not authorized by permit.** The issuance or granting of a permit pursuant
6998 to this section does not authorize the violation of any provision of this code or other applicable
6999 ordinances. The issuance of a permit does not prevent the *building official* from requiring
7000 correction of errors or from preventing moving operations along the public ways which are in
7001 violation of this code or any other city ordinance, which violate or disturb the public peace, general
7002 welfare or public safety, or which create a nuisance.
7003

7004 **3710.7 Removal of obstructions; time and route.** Movements authorized by permit shall be
7005 made at the time and along the route specified by the *building official*. The granting of the permit
7006 does not authorize the cutting or removing of trees or branches or the adjustment of wires, utilities,
7007 signs, markers or public facilities. The mover shall give notice in the manner required by Section
7008 3712.2 to the utility companies to remove the meters and public utility facilities prior to moving.
7009

7010 **3710.8 Bond required.** The owner of the structure to be moved or of the site to which the structure
7011 is being moved shall, upon application for a permit to move a structure, file with the *building*

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7012 official a cash bond, or a surety bond by a surety acceptable to the city, to cover the city's costs of
7013 bringing the site to which a structure has been moved back to its original state should any exterior
7014 work on the site or structure not be completed in compliance with the time schedule set forth in
7015 Section 3710.3.2. The amount of the bond required is equal to \$1 for each square foot of structure
7016 being moved, measured from the structure's exterior, or \$10,000, whichever is greater. Action by
7017 the city that is covered by the bond may include, but is not limited to, demolition or removal of
7018 the structure. A surety bond shall provide that 30 days' written notice be given to the *building*
7019 *official* in the event of any material change in or cancellation of the bond by the surety.
7020

7021 **Exception:** The bond requirements do not apply if a structure is being moved to property
7022 owned by the federal or state government or a political subdivision of the state.
7023

7024 SECTION 3711 7025 PREMOVE INSPECTIONS 7026

7027 **3711.1 Request for inspection and payment of fees.** A person moving a structure to a lot located
7028 within the city shall request an inspection from the *building official* and pay all applicable fees
7029 required by Section 303 of Chapter 52 of the *Dallas City Code* at least five business days before
7030 the move is scheduled.
7031

7032 **Exception:** Industrialized building or housing units that maintain a current certification as an
7033 industrialized structure by the State of Texas shall not be assessed a pre-move inspection fee.
7034

7035 **3711.2 Inspection.** If the *building official* determines from inspection that a structure requested
7036 to be moved is in compliance with, or can be made to comply with, this code and all other
7037 applicable city ordinances and authorizes the structure to be moved into the city, the structure shall
7038 be moved within 90 days from the date of inspection or another inspection fee will be required.
7039

7040 **3711.3 Moving structures through the city.** A structure may be moved through the city from
7041 outside the city limits, if the destination site is outside the city, either pursuant to a Texas State
7042 Highway Department permit, if the move is over state or federal highways, or otherwise pursuant
7043 to the provisions of this chapter.
7044

7045 SECTION 3712 7046 WEIGHT AND SIZE REGULATIONS 7047

7048 **3712.1 Width.** The total width, including eaves, porches or other overhang, of any structure to be
7049 moved shall not exceed the width of any street, measured from normal curb alignment to normal
7050 curb alignment at any place along the route unless the mover obtains written approval of the
7051 *building official*. The width, length or height permitted to be moved may be reduced by the *building*
7052 *official* on the basis of traffic volume, geometrics of the route, or length of the move in terms of
7053 distance and time. The applicant shall investigate the route and provide for proper clearance along
7054 the route.
7055

7056 **3712.2 Height.** The total height of any structure to be moved shall not exceed 17½ feet (5334

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7057 mm) in height when loaded unless the mover gives evidence to the *building official* that the utility
7058 companies have received written notice of the move of an over height structure at least five
7059 business days before the scheduled move of a structure not exceeding 21 feet (6400 mm) in height
7060 and at least 15 business days before the scheduled move of a structure exceeding 21 feet (6400
7061 mm) in height.

7063 **3712.3 Weight.** The total weight of the vehicle and load shall not exceed the maximum weight
7064 limits, which are provided in Chapter 28 of the *Dallas City Code*, as amended.
7065

7066 **3712.4 Moving structures on bridges, underpasses and similar facilities.** No person shall
7067 operate any vehicle, including its load, over or on any bridge or through any underpass or similar
7068 facility unless the height and width of the vehicle and load is less than the vertical and horizontal
7069 clearance of the facility.
7070

7071 **3712.5 Moving operations to comply with state law.** Moving operations shall meet all
7072 requirements of the *Texas Transportation Code*, as amended, including the display of side or
7073 clearance flags and lights when and where required.
7074

7075 **SECTION 3713**
7076 **MOVING A STRUCTURE**
7077

7078 **3713.1 How movement is to be made.** The moving of a structure shall be conducted expeditiously
7079 and without unnecessary obstruction of the public way. If the vehicle or equipment becomes
7080 disabled so that normal operation is impossible or impractical, the person in charge of the moving
7081 shall have the vehicle and equipment, with loads, immediately removed to a temporary parking
7082 area off the traveled roadway and notify the *building official* of the inability to complete the move
7083 and of the temporary storage location of the structure. The vehicle and equipment shall be
7084 immediately restored to operating condition, the move rescheduled, and the vehicle and equipment
7085 escorted to the destination.
7086

7087 **3713.2 Parking, standing or storage prohibited.** The *building official* is authorized to remove,
7088 or have removed, any vehicle, equipment or load left parked or standing by a mover on any portion
7089 of the public right-of-way or other temporary storage place when the mover fails to remove the
7090 encroachment within a reasonable time. All costs incurred will be charged to the mover. No further
7091 permits shall be granted to the mover until the encroachments have been removed and the costs
7092 have been paid. Failure to pay the costs will result in recovery of the costs from the mover's surety
7093 bond filed pursuant to Section 3702.3.
7094

7095 **SECTION 3714**
7096 **ESCORT REQUIRED**
7097

7098 **3714.1 Escort required.** No person shall move any structure for which a permit is required by
7099 this chapter along, across or over any public way within the city unless accompanied by an escort
7100 who is approved by the *building official* and who has authority to direct traffic and exercise other
7101 police powers.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7102 **3714.2 Distribution or moving permit copies.** The building mover shall provide the escort a
7103 copy of the moving permit. When the moved structure has been placed at its final location, the
7104 building mover shall mark a copy of the moving permit with the date and time the move is
7105 completed and shall return the copy to the *building official* within three working days.
7106

7107 **3714.3 Escort fee.** The escort fee is determined by the mover and the escort and is in addition to
7108 the moving permit fee.
7109

7110 **SECTION 3715** 7111 **CLEANUP OF SITE FROM WHICH STRUCTURE IS REMOVED** 7112

7113 **3715.1 Requirements for clearing site.** Within 30 days after a structure is removed from a lot or
7114 tract of land within the city, the lot or tract of land shall be cleaned by the mover or owner of the
7115 lot and left free from any unsafe, hazardous or unsanitary condition. All debris, rubbish and waste
7116 material resulting from the moving shall be removed from the site. All portions of the structure,
7117 appurtenances and incidental accessory structures remaining after the removal of the structure shall
7118 be demolished, after obtaining a demolition permit pursuant to Chapter 40, by the mover or owner
7119 of the lot to grade level, including all wood, brick and concrete foundation and concrete elements
7120 such as porches, slabs and steps which have portions above the grade. The mover or owner of the
7121 lot shall leave the site blade clean and compact, level and smooth all basements, cellars, wells,
7122 cisterns, excavations, holes or depressions which extend below the grade of the site and are
7123 apparent as a consequence of the moving. The mover or owner of the lot shall plug air and
7124 watertight sewer laterals, house lines and any other sewer and plumbing connections.
7125

7126 **3715.2 Letter of intent to clear site.** The mover shall file, with the application for a permit, a
7127 letter of intent to clear the lot, signed by the mover and the owner of the lot from which the structure
7128 is to be removed. Failure of the mover or owner of the lot to clear the lot as required in Section
7129 3715.1, and in compliance with the submitted letter of intent, is a violation of Section 3715.
7130

7131 **SECTION 3716** 7132 **MOVING PERMIT FEES** 7133

7134 **3716.1 Moving permit fees.** In addition to filing an application for a permit to move a structure
7135 as provided in this chapter, the applicant shall pay all applicable fees required by Section 303,
7136 Chapter 52 of the *Dallas City Code*. A permit and accompanying fee is required for each move
7137 and, notwithstanding any other provisions of this code, no organization or agency is exempt from
7138 this fee.
7139

7140 **3716.2 Other fees.** Nothing in this section will relieve any person from the payment of any other
7141 fee required by other city ordinances or regulations.
7142

7143 **3716.3 Ad valorem taxes to be paid.** A moving permit shall not be issued until the city tax
7144 assessor and collector has determined that ad valorem taxes on the property concerned have been
7145 paid.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7146 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

7147 **169. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter**

7148 **38, “Fencing,” to read as follows:**

7149 **“CHAPTER 38**
7150 **FENCING**
7151

7152 **SECTION 3801**
7153 **HEIGHT**
7154

7155 **3801.1 General.** Fences shall not exceed the height provided in the *Dallas Development Code*.
7156

7157 **SECTION 3802**
7158 **STRENGTH**
7159

7160 **3802.1 General.** Fences shall be of sufficient strength to support their own dead load and to resist
7161 overturning. Fences over 9 feet (2743.2 mm) in height shall be designed as structures and have
7162 plans and specifications prepared by an engineer registered in the State of Texas.
7163

7164 **SECTION 3803**
7165 **VISIBILITY OBSTRUCTION PROHIBITED**
7166

7167 **3803.1 General.** No fence may be erected or maintained in a manner so as to be a visibility
7168 obstruction as defined in the *Dallas Development Code*.”
7169

7170 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

7171 **170. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter**
7172

7173 **39, “Tents,” to read as follows:**
7174

7175 **“CHAPTER 39**
7176 **TENTS**
7177

7178 **SECTION 3901**
7179 **SCOPE**
7180

7181 **3901.1 Scope.** This chapter applies only to a tent used for temporary operations. A tent or other
7182 fabric or membrane structure or portion of a structure intended to be in place permanently shall
7183 comply with the provisions of this code regulating permanent buildings and structures.
7184

7185 **SECTION 3902**
7186 **DEFINITIONS**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7187 **3902.1 Definitions.** The following terms used in this chapter shall have the meanings as defined
7188 in Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Code:
7189

7190 **PREMISES.**
7191

7192 **TENT.**
7193

7194 **SECTION 3903** 7195 **PERMIT REQUIREMENTS FOR TENTS** 7196

7197 **3903.1 Offense.** A person commits an offense if he erects or maintains a *tent* covered by this
7198 chapter without having a valid *tent* permit issued by the *building official*.
7199

7200 **3903.2 Permit required.** A permit is required in accordance with Chapter 52, “Administrative
7201 Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Code.
7202

7203 **3903.3 Application.** An application is required in accordance with Chapter 52, “Administrative
7204 Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Code.
7205

7206 **3903.4 Issuance of permit.** The conditions of permit issuance shall be in accordance with Chapter
7207 52, “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of the Dallas City Code.
7208

7209 **SECTION 3904** 7210 **USE CONDITIONS** 7211

7212 **3904.1 Compliance with other laws.** The use and placement of a *tent* and all operations within a
7213 *tent* shall comply with all city ordinances and other applicable laws.
7214

7215 **3904.2 Privilege.** The granting of a *tent* permit is a privilege that may be revoked at any time upon
7216 violation of any provision of this chapter.
7217

7218 **3904.3 Other permits.** Electrical permits, plumbing permits, mechanical permits, food
7219 establishment permits, alcoholic beverage licenses and all other permits and licenses required by
7220 city ordinance or other law shall be applied for separately in accordance with the applicable
7221 ordinance or law.
7222

7223 **3904.4 Placement.** Every part of a tent, including guy wires, deadmen, stakes and equipment, shall
7224 be set back a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) from all property lines and adjacent buildings and
7225 shall comply with all building lines and minimum yard areas as required by the *Dallas*
7226 *Development Code*.
7227

7228 **Exception:** *Tents* complying with the location provisions of Section 3103.8 of the *Dallas Fire*
7229 *Code* in addition to the requirements of the *Dallas Development Code*.
7230

7231 **3904.5 Lot coverage.** No *tent* may be erected to cover more than 75 percent of the *premises* on

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7232 which it is located.
7233

7234 **3904.6 Structural requirements.** All supporting members shall be of sufficient size and strength
7235 to adequately support the tent. The supporting members shall be guyed and braced to withstand a
7236 wind pressure of not less than 20 pounds per square foot of the projected area of the tent.
7237

7238 **3904.7 Nuisances.** Loud speakers or amplifiers, when used, shall not be used so as to create a
7239 nuisance as described in the city ordinances and other applicable laws.
7240

7241 **3904.8 Electricity.** All electrical wiring shall comply with the Dallas Electrical Code. Each
7242 premises on which a tent is to be erected shall be provided with a separate, individual electrical
7243 service from the power source.
7244

7245 **3904.9 Construction.** Each tent shall be constructed of flame-resistive materials as specified in
7246 the Dallas Fire Code.
7247

7248 **3904.10 Parking.** The number of parking spaces for a tent shall be provided in accordance with
7249 the Dallas Development Code.
7250

7251 **Exception:** A tent that is on the same lot as and is accessory to a main use need not be provided
7252 with additional parking.
7253

SECTION 3905 **EXITS**

7254
7255
7256
7257 **3905.1 General requirements.** Arrangement of seats, aisles, passageways and exits shall conform
7258 to Chapter 10.
7259

7260 **3905.2 Additional requirements.** Every tent shall be provided with exits meeting all of the
7261 following additional provisions contained in this section.
7262

7263 **3905.2.1 Line of travel.** The line of travel to an exit shall not be greater than 100 feet (30 480
7264 mm).
7265

7266 **3905.2.2 Height.** The height of doors, aisles or passageways may be no less than 7 feet (2133.6
7267 mm).
7268

7269 **3905.2.3 Obstructions.** No stakes, guy wires or guy ropes may obstruct an exit way.
7270

7271 **3905.2.4 Exit openings.** Exit openings from any tent shall remain open or may be covered by
7272 canvas, provided:
7273

7274 1. The coverings are free-sliding on a proper support, and the support shall not be less
7275 than 12 inches (304.8 mm) above the top of the opening;

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7276 2. The coverings shall be so arranged that, when open, no part of the coverings obstruct
7277 the opening; and
7278

7279 3. The coverings shall be of a color or colors that definitely contrast with the color of the
7280 tent.
7281

7282 **3905.2.5 Lighting.** Exits, aisles and passageways leading to exits shall be adequately lighted
7283 at all times when the structures are occupied. Artificial light shall be provided whenever natural
7284 light is inadequate.
7285

7286 **3905.2.6 Exit signs.** Signs reading “EXIT” in red letters on a white background or in other
7287 approved distinguishable colors shall adequately indicate exit doorways. Sign letters shall be
7288 at least 6 inches (152.4 mm) high and not less than ¾ inch (19.05 mm) wide. Exit signs shall
7289 be illuminated in tents with occupant loads over 100 persons in the manner specified below:
7290

7291 1. Two separate electrical sources are required for occupant loads over 600.
7292

7293 2. Two separate electrical circuits, one of which shall be separate from other circuits, are
7294 required for occupant loads of 600 or less.
7295

7296 **SECTION 3906**
7297 **CLEARANCE OF PREMISES**
7298

7299 **3906.1 General.** The operator of premises for which a tent permit has been issued shall remove
7300 all structures, materials and debris within two days after the expiration or revocation of a tent
7301 permit.”
7302

7303 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

7304 **171. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter**

7305 **40, “Demolition of Structures,” to read as follows:**

7306 **“CHAPTER 40**
7307 **DEMOLITION OF STRUCTURES**
7308

7309 **SECTION 4001**
7310 **SCOPE**
7311

7312 **4001.1 Scope.** All demolition of structures or portions of structures shall be in accordance with
7313 this chapter.

7314 **SECTION 4002**
7315 **DEFINITIONS**
7316

7317 **4002.1 Definitions.** The following terms used in this chapter shall have the meanings indicated in
7318 this section:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7319 **CONTRACTOR.** A person, and any employees, engaged in the business of demolition of
7320 structures, who have contracted to demolish a particular structure.
7321

7322 **DEMOLITION.** The destruction of a structure or part of a structure.
7323

7324 **INSECTS.** Include cockroaches, fleas, ticks and bloodsucking insects that transmit disease to
7325 warm-blooded creatures, but excluding subterranean termites.
7326

7327 **SECTION 4003**
7328 **DEMOLITION PERMIT REQUIRED; FEE EXEMPTION**
7329

7330 **4003.1 Permit required.** A person shall not demolish or begin *demolition* of a structure without
7331 obtaining a *demolition* permit from the *building official*.
7332

7333 **4003.2 Fees.** Before being issued a *demolition* permit, the applicant shall pay all applicable fees
7334 required by Section 303 of Administrative Procedure for the Construction Codes of the Dallas City
7335 Code.
7336

7337 **SECTION 4004**
7338 **PERMIT APPLICATION**
7339

7340 **4004.1 General.** Application for a *demolition* permit signed and verified by the owner or owner's
7341 agent shall be made to the *building official* on a form provided for the purpose and shall include
7342 all of the following information:
7343

- 7344 1. Location of the structure to be demolished.
7345
- 7346 2. A plan for *demolition* and a schedule of time to complete the *demolition* project.
7347
- 7348 3. Location of the sites to be used for disposal of debris and proposed routes for transport of
7349 the debris to the sites.
7350
- 7351 4. Name and address of the owner of the structure and the notarized signature of the owner or
7352 the owner's agent authorizing the *contractor* to obtain a permit for *demolition* of the
7353 structure.
7354
- 7355 5. Name and address of the *contractor*.
7356
- 7357 6. Documentary evidence from an insurance company authorized to do business in the State
7358 of Texas, indicating a willingness to provide liability insurance required by Section 4010.
7359
- 7360 7. A statement that the abatement of asbestos hazards will be accomplished in accordance
7361 with guidelines and procedures established by the department of environmental and health
7362 services of the city.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 7363 8. Such additional information as the *building official* considers necessary to promote the
7364 implementation or enforcement of this chapter or the protection of the public safety.
7365

7366 SECTION 4005

7367 REVIEW OF PERMIT APPLICATION; RODENT OR INSECT INFESTATION; 7368 DEMOLITION REVIEW COMMITTEE; SPECIAL CONDITIONS 7369

7370 **4005.1 Rodent or insect infestation.** If the *building official* determines that the structure is
7371 infested with rodents or *insects*, the *building official* shall require the structure to be treated to
7372 eliminate the infestation before issuing a permit.
7373

7374 **4005.2. Review of permit application.** If the *building official* determines from the application
7375 that, because of the scope of the proposed *demolition* project, further review is necessary, the
7376 *building official* may call a meeting of the *demolition* review committee. The *building official* shall
7377 give the committee members, the owner of the property and the *contractor* at least three days'
7378 written notice of the meeting unless the *contractor* requests an earlier meeting.
7379

7380 **4005.3 Demolition review committee.** The *demolition* review committee is composed of the
7381 *building official* as chair and the directors or designated representatives from the following city
7382 departments:
7383

- 7384 1. Department of code compliance.
7385
7386 2. Department of sanitation services.
7387
7388 3. Fire department.
7389
7390 4. Mobility and Street Services Department or its equivalent.
7391
7392 5. Office of Environmental Quality.
7393
7394 6. Police department.
7395

7396 **4005.4 Hearing.** The *contractor* and the owner, or the owner's representative other than the
7397 *contractor*, shall attend the meeting of the *demolition* review committee and explain in detail the
7398 methods and procedures to be used in the proposed *demolition* project.
7399

7400 **4005.5 Special conditions.** After reviewing the application and hearing the presentation of the
7401 *contractor*, the *demolition* review committee shall determine if, for the protection of the public
7402 safety, any special conditions need to be required for the issuance of a permit. At the conclusion
7403 of the meeting, the special conditions, if any, shall be listed and recorded so that they may be made
7404 a part of the permit.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7405
7406
7407
7408
7409
7410
7411
7412
7413
7414
7415
7416
7417
7418
7419
7420

SECTION 4006 PERMIT ISSUANCE; APPEAL OF DENIAL

4006.1 Issuance of permit. *The building official shall issue a demolition permit to the applicant, incorporating any special conditions as part of the permit, if the building official determines that:*

1. The applicant has complied with the requirements of Sections 4003, 4004 and 4005;
2. The applicant has submitted proof of the insurance coverage required by Section 4010;
3. The methods and procedures to be used by the applicant will comply with the requirements of this chapter and will not present a hazard to the public; and
4. The applicant has agreed to comply with the special conditions, if any, determined to be necessary by the demolition review committee.

7421
7422
7423
7424
7425

4006.2 Appeal of denial. *If the building official denies issuance of a permit, the applicant may appeal the action to the Building Inspection Advisory, Examining and Appeals board under procedures established in Chapter 52, Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes, of the Dallas City Code for appeals to that board.*

7426
7427
7428
7429

SECTION 4007 TRANSFERABILITY; COMMENCEMENT OF WORK; CONTINUATION OF WORK; DURATION OF PERMIT; EXTENSION

7430
7431

4007.1 Transferability. *A demolition permit is not transferable to another.*

7432
7433
7434
7435

4007.2 Commencement of work. *A contractor or owner shall begin demolition work authorized by a permit within 10 working days from the date the permit is issued, otherwise the permit expires and the contractor or owner must apply for a new permit.*

7436
7437
7438

Exception: *The time limit in the contract applies for a contractor who demolishes a structure under contract with the city.*

7439
7440
7441
7442

4007.2 Continuation of work. *After beginning a demolition project, a contractor or owner shall work continuously at the normal rate of progress in keeping with good demolition practices until the project is completed.*

7443
7444
7445
7446
7447

4007.3[4] Expiration of permit to demolish smaller structures. *A permit issued for demolition of a structure of less than 500 square feet (46.45 m²) or a single-family or duplex dwelling expires two years [30 days] after the date of issuance if no progress has been made toward completion of the demolition, and demolition work authorized by the permit, including cleanup, shall be completed within the 30 days of the date demolition commences.*

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7448 **4007.4[5] Expiration of permit to demolish larger structures.** A permit issued for *demolition*
7449 of a structure other than a structure described in Section 4007.3 [4007.4] expires two years [~~60~~
7450 ~~days~~] after the date of issuance if no progress has been made toward completion of the *demolition*
7451 unless a longer period of time is granted in the permit as a special condition approved by the
7452 *demolition review committee*. *Demolition* work, including cleanup, authorized by the permit shall
7453 be completed within 60 days of the date *demolition* commences or within the time stated in the
7454 special condition.
7455

7456 **4007.5[6] Extensions of permit.** The *building official* may grant an extension of a *demolition*
7457 permit if the *contractor* or owner shows good cause for not completing the project within the
7458 required time.
7459

SECTION 4008 **OTHER PERMITS**

7460
7461
7462
7463 **4008.1 General.** Issuance of a *demolition* permit does not authorize an activity which requires
7464 another permit, as illustrated by, but not limited to, welding, cutting with a torch, construction of
7465 pedestrian protections and hauling of debris. The requirement of other permits may be discussed
7466 with the *contractor* at the *demolition review meeting*.
7467

SECTION 4009 **COST FOR CHANGES IN PUBLIC PROPERTY; EQUIPMENT OR UTILITIES**

7468
7469
7470
7471 **4009.1 General.** The owner of property to be demolished is responsible for the cost of changes in
7472 public property, equipment or utilities, including, but not limited to, damage caused by the
7473 *demolition* activity, removal and reinstallation if damage cannot be avoided, and temporary
7474 equipment or utilities if determined to be necessary by the *building official* or the *demolition review*
7475 *committee*.
7476

SECTION 4010 **INSURANCE; INDEMNIFICATION**

7477
7478
7479
7480 **4010.1 Insurance required.** An applicant for a *demolition* permit shall procure and keep in full
7481 force and effect commercial general liability insurance and comprehensive automobile liability
7482 insurance written by an insurance company approved by the State of Texas and acceptable to the
7483 city and issued in the standard form approved by the Texas Department of Insurance. All
7484 provisions of the policy shall be acceptable to the city. The insured provisions of the policy shall
7485 name the city and its officers and employees as additional insureds.
7486

7487 **Exception:** Insurance is not required if the structure to be demolished is less than 500 square
7488 feet (46.45 m²) in area, and the *demolition* will not affect public property.
7489

7490 **4010.1.1 Coverage requirements.** The following coverage types and limits shall be
7491 maintained at all times during the term of the *demolition* permit:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 7492 1. The commercial general liability insurance shall provide combined single limits of
7493 liability for bodily injury and property damage of not less than \$1,000,000 for each
7494 occurrence, or the equivalent, and include coverage for premises operations, asbestos
7495 hazards (if the project involves asbestos), independent *contractors*, products/completed
7496 operations, personal injury, contractual liability and medical payments. This insurance
7497 shall also include coverage for underground, explosion and collapse hazards.
7498
- 7499 2. The comprehensive automobile liability insurance shall provide combined single limits
7500 of liability for bodily injury and property damage of not less than \$500,000 for each
7501 occurrence, or the equivalent, for each motor vehicle used by the permittee.
7502

7503 **Exception:** If the *building official* or the *demolition* review committee determines that
7504 public property will not be affected by the project and the scope of the project is not
7505 sufficient to require the insurance limits established in Section 4010.1.1, the *building*
7506 *official* or the *demolition* review committee, on recommendation of the office of risk
7507 management, may lower the limits required for a particular permit and include the lower
7508 limits as a special condition incorporated into the permit.
7509

7510 **4010.1.2 Cancellation provisions.** Each insurance policy shall include a cancellation
7511 provision in which the insurance company is required to notify the *building official* in writing
7512 not fewer than 30 days before canceling, failing to renew or making a material change to the
7513 insurance policy.
7514

7515 **4010.2 Indemnification required.** A permittee shall execute a written agreement to indemnify
7516 the city and its officers and employees against all claims of injury or damage to persons or property
7517 arising out of *demolition* activities by the permittee that affect public property.
7518

7519 SECTION 4011 7520 DEMOLITION BY CITY 7521

7522 **4011.1 Inapplicability of certain requirements.** Sections 4007, 4009 and 4010 do not apply to
7523 *demolition* work conducted by city employees in the course of their city employment.
7524

7525 SECTION 4012 7526 PREPARATION OF THE DEMOLITION SITE 7527

7528 **4012.1 Site preparation requirements.** A *contractor* shall not begin *demolition* work until all of
7529 the following preparations have been made:
7530

- 7531 1. Relocate gas, water, steam, storm and sanitary sewer lines that will be used during the
7532 *demolition* process and construct devices to protect the relocated lines.
7533
- 7534 2. Shut off and cap accessible gas, water, steam, storm and sanitary sewer lines not required
7535 during *demolition* outside the building line and shut off other lines as they become
7536 accessible.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7537 3. Reduce electrical service connections to a minimum needed for the *demolition* work and
7538 relocate and protect needed lines.
7539

7540 4. Disconnect unneeded electrical service lines outside the property line and conspicuously
7541 identify energized circuits.
7542

7543 **4012.2 Notification to utility agencies.** A contractor shall notify the appropriate utility agency
7544 before making the preparations required in Section 4012.1 and shall accomplish the disconnections
7545 and construction of protective devices in a manner approved by that agency.
7546

7547 **SECTION 4013** 7548 **PROTECTIVE DEVICES** 7549

7550 **4013.1 Protective devices.** A contractor shall not begin *demolition* of the exterior walls or roof
7551 of a structure until the following protective devices have been constructed when required by the
7552 *demolition* review committee:
7553

7554 1. A walkway or pedestrian protection in compliance with Section 3306; and
7555

7556 2. A structure to protect public property and utilities, as illustrated by, but not limited to, fire
7557 hydrants, street lights, signal lights and control boxes, parking meters, utility lines and
7558 poles, and traffic signs.
7559

7560 **4013.2 Fencing and security.** If the *demolition* review committee determines it is necessary, a
7561 special condition to the permit may require a fence enclosing the *demolition* site and a security
7562 guard to be kept on duty 24 hours a day.
7563

7564 **4013.3 Maintenance and removal of protective devices.** A contractor shall maintain the
7565 required protective devices so long as a hazard to persons or property exists and shall remove the
7566 devices immediately when they are no longer needed for protection.
7567

7568 **4013.4 Means of egress.** A party wall balcony or horizontal exit shall not be destroyed unless and
7569 until a substitute means of egress has been provided and approved.
7570

7571 **4013.5 Water accumulation.** Provision shall be made to prevent the accumulation of water or
7572 damage to any foundations on the premises or the adjoining property.
7573

7574 **SECTION 4014** 7575 **WARNING SIGNS AND BARRICADES** 7576

7577 **4014.1 General requirements.** A contractor, when required by the *demolition* review committee,
7578 shall prominently erect and maintain, while the *demolition* is in progress, signs and barricades
7579 which comply with the city's traffic barricade manual and warn members of the public of the
7580 hazards that exist as a result of the *demolition* work.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

SECTION 4015 LIGHTS

7581
7582
7583
7584 **4015.1 General requirements.** A contractor shall provide lights between sunset and sunrise that
7585 illuminate hazards near or upon sidewalks or streets, as illustrated by, but not limited to, pits,
7586 excavations, fences, barriers, equipment, building material or rubbish.
7587

7588 **4015.2 Pedestrian passageways.** In pedestrian passageways, a contractor shall provide:
7589

- 7590 1. Amber lights with a capacity of at least 100 watts on the street side of the walkway at both
7591 ends and near the center; and
7592
7593 2. Sixty-watt lights spaced every 10 feet (3048 mm) along an open walkway and along the
7594 inside and outside of a covered pedestrian way.
7595

SECTION 4016 DUST AND DRAINAGE

7596
7597
7598
7599 **4016.1 Dust.** In order to control dust in the air, a contractor shall do the following:
7600

- 7601 1. Maintain an adequate water supply on the demolition site to properly control dust.
7602
7603 2. Wet down material sufficiently to lay the dust before the material is removed.
7604
7605 3. Remove asbestos in accordance with applicable city, state and federal laws and regulations.
7606

7607 **4016.2 Drainage.** A contractor shall maintain the drainage facilities so that storm water and water
7608 used for controlling dust will not cause flooding of streets, sewers or other property.
7609

SECTION 4017 HOURS OF OPERATION

7610
7611
7612
7613 **4017.1 Residential areas.** A contractor shall conduct demolition activity on a structure in or
7614 adjacent to a residential area only during the days and hours specified in Chapter 30, "Noise," of
7615 the Dallas City Code.
7616

7617 **4017.2 Nonresidential areas.** The building official or the demolition review committee shall
7618 establish the hours of operation at demolition sites not in or adjacent to a residential area to
7619 minimize the effect of noise and the interference with normal movement of pedestrians and
7620 vehicular traffic. The established hours of operation will be incorporated as a special condition of
7621 the permit.
7622

SECTION 4018 METHODS OF DEMOLITION

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7625 **4018.1 General method.** In conducting *demolition* activities, a *contractor* shall do the following:
7626

- 7627 1. Demolish exterior walls and floor construction beginning at the top of the structure and
7628 proceeding downward, except that holes may be cut in floors through which to drop
7629 materials if precautions are taken so that dropped materials are contained and dust is
7630 controlled.
7631
- 7632 2. Completely demolish each story of exterior wall and floor construction and dispose of all
7633 materials and debris by moving to a storage space before beginning removal of walls and
7634 floors in the next story below.
7635
- 7636 3. Floor over or enclose with guardrails and toe boards all floor openings and shafts not used
7637 for material chutes.
7638
- 7639 4. During the *demolition* of a structure that is originally more than 70 feet (21 336 mm) high
7640 and that is in proximity to property lines, provide scatterboards not more than two stories
7641 below the story being removed. These scatterboards shall:
7642
- 7643 4.1. project from the exterior of the structure not less than 6 feet (1828.8 mm);
7644
- 7645 4.2. be designed for a live load of 100 pounds per square foot (488.24 kg/m²) for a
7646 distance of 5 feet (1524 mm) from the wall line;
7647
- 7648 4.3. be floored with at least 2-inch (50.8 mm) thick plank, laid tight and secured; and
7649
- 7650 4.4. have solid plank guardrails 3 feet (914.4 mm) in height, rigidly braced and secured
7651 on the outer edge and ends.
7652
- 7653 5. Reduce all improvements to their component parts and demolish all improvements to
7654 ground level, including, but not limited to, foundations, porches, walks, driveways, slabs
7655 and steps which have elements above grade.
7656

7657 **4018.2 Other methods.** If a *contractor* desires to use a method other than that required in Section
7658 4018.1, as illustrated by, but not limited to, *demolition* of a structure in sections, use of explosives,
7659 or use of “headache balls,” the proposed method must be approved by the *building official* or the
7660 *demolition* review committee to ensure the safety of persons and property, with appropriate special
7661 conditions incorporated in the permit.
7662

7663 **SECTION 4019** 7664 **DROPPING OF MATERIAL** 7665

7666 **4019.1 General requirements.** A *contractor* shall not drop material by gravity to a point outside
7667 the exterior walls of a structure unless the material is dropped through an enclosed wooden or
7668 metal chute.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7669 **Exceptions:** This restriction does not apply to the following:
7670

- 7671 1. A single-family dwelling and its accessory structures.
7672
- 7673 2. A structure whose height is less than the distance from the building line to the nearest
7674 property line or public sidewalk.
7675

7676 **SECTION 4020**
7677 **FIRE PROTECTION**
7678

7679 **4020.1 General requirements.** For requirements governing fire protection at a *demolition* site,
7680 see the *Dallas Fire Code*.
7681

7682 **SECTION 4021**
7683 **REMOVAL OF MATERIAL**
7684

7685 **4021.1 General requirements.** *A contractor shall remove all material, rubbish and debris at least*
7686 *once each day from the demolition site in accordance with applicable city, state and federal laws*
7687 *and regulations, and in accordance with the routes, disposal sites and precautions established by*
7688 *the building official or the demolition review committee, taking care to maintain adjacent streets,*
7689 *alleys and public ways clear of loose material.*
7690

7691 **SECTION 4022**
7692 **CONDITION OF THE DEMOLITION SITE**
7693

7694 **4022.1 Site condition upon completion of demolition.** Upon completion of a *demolition* project,
7695 a *contractor* shall:
7696

- 7697 1. Leave the demolition site blade clean; and
7698
- 7699 2. Fill, level, compact and smooth basements, cellars, wells, cisterns, excavations, holes,
7700 voids under public or private sidewalks, or any declivity or depression that extends below
7701 the grade of the lot and is an apparent consequence of the demolition.
7702

7703 **Exception:** *A contractor is not required to fill, level, compact and smooth the demolition*
7704 *site if a building permit has been issued for new construction on the site, to begin within*
7705 *60 days of completion of the demolition project.*
7706

7707 **4022.2 Inert material as fill.** Inert material may be used as fill if the top 1 foot (304.8 mm) of fill
7708 is clean earth.
7709

7710 **4022.3 Shrubbery and trees.** Living shrubbery and trees are not required to be removed from the
7711 site.”

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7712 Carryover Dallas Amendment

7713 172. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter

7714 41, “Building Security,” to read as follows:

7715 “CHAPTER 41 7716 BUILDING SECURITY

7718 SECTION 4100 7719 PURPOSE 7720

7721 **4100.1 General.** The purpose of this chapter is to establish minimum standards to make dwelling
7722 units resistant to unlawful entry.
7723

7724 SECTION 4101 7725 SCOPE 7726

7727 **4101.1 General.** The provisions of this chapter apply to the following openings:
7728

- 7729 1. Openings into dwellings within apartment houses of Group R, Division 2 Occupancies.
- 7730
- 7731 2. Openings into a dwelling and dwelling units of Group R, Division 3 Occupancies.
- 7732
- 7733 3. Openings between attached garages and the dwelling units.
- 7734
- 7735 4. Openings into attached garages.
- 7736

7737 **Exceptions:** 7738

- 7739 1. An opening in an exterior wall when all portions of the opening are more than 12 feet
7740 (3656.6 mm) vertically or 6 feet (1826.8 mm) horizontally from an accessible surface
7741 of any adjoining yard, court, passageway, public way, walk, breezeway, patio, planter,
7742 porch or similar area.
7743
- 7744 2. All openings in an exterior wall when all portions of the opening are more than 12 feet
7745 (3656.6 mm) vertically or 6 feet (1826.8 mm) horizontally from the surface of any
7746 adjoining roof, balcony landing, stair tread, platform or similar structure, or when any
7747 portion of such surface is more than 12 feet (3656.6 mm) above an accessible surface.
7748
- 7749 3. All openings in a roof when all portions of such roof are more than 12 feet (3656.6
7750 mm) above an accessible surface.
7751
- 7752 4. An opening where the smaller dimension is 6 inches (152.4 mm) or less, provided that
7753 the closest edge of the opening is at least 40 inches (1016 mm) from the locking device
7754 of a door.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

- 7755 5. An opening protected by required fire door assemblies having a fire-endurance rating
7756 of not less than 45 minutes.
7757

7758 SECTION 4102

7759 OBSTRUCTING MEANS OF EGRESS

7760

7761 **4102.1 General.** Security methods shall not create a hazard to life by obstructing any means of
7762 egress or any opening that is classified as an emergency exiting facility. Security provisions
7763 contained in this chapter do not supersede or waive the safety provisions relative to latching or
7764 locking devices on means of egress doors or egress windows required by any other provision of
7765 this code.
7766

7767 **4102.2 Emergency escape or rescue windows.** Bars, grilles, grates or similar security or
7768 secondary locking devices may be installed on emergency escape or rescue windows or doors
7769 required by Section 1031 of this code and Section R310 of the *Dallas One- and Two-Family*
7770 *Dwelling Code*, provided the following:
7771

- 7772 1. Such devices are equipped with approved release mechanisms that are operable from the
7773 inside without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.
7774
- 7775 2. The building is equipped with smoke detectors installed in accordance with Section 907.2,
7776 1103.7 and 1103.8 of the *Dallas Fire Code* and Section R314 of the *Dallas One- and Two-*
7777 *Family Dwelling Code*.
7778

7779 SECTION 4113

7780 ENTRY VISION

7781

7782 **4103.1 Vision required.** All main or front entry doors to dwelling units shall be arranged so that
7783 the occupant has a view of the area immediately outside the door without opening the door. Except
7784 as provided in Section 716.2.2.1, the view may be provided by a door viewer having a field of
7785 view of not less than 180 degrees or through a window or view port.
7786

7787 **4103.2 Glazing separation.** Breakable glass should not be installed within 40 inches (1016 mm)
7788 of a door-locking device.
7789

7790 Exceptions:

7791

- 7792 1. For required means of egress doors and emergency escape or rescue doors, glazing may
7793 be installed within 40 inches (1016 mm) of the locking device if the glass is laminated,
7794 patterned, wired, obscured or protected by approved bars, grilles or grates.
7795
- 7796 2. For other doors, glazing may be installed within 40 inches (1016 mm) of a locking
7797 device that is key-opened from both the inside and the outside.

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

SECTION 4104 SWINGING DOORS

7798
7799
7800

7801 **4104.1 General.** Swinging doors regulated by this chapter shall comply with the following:

7802

7803 1. Wood doors shall be solid core and not less than 1³/₈-inches (34.92 mm) thick.

7804

7805 2. Double doors shall have the inactive leaf secured by header and threshold bolts that
7806 penetrate metal strike plates. The bolts shall be flush-mounted in the door edge whenever
7807 breakable glass is located within 40 inches (1016 mm) of the bolts.

7808

7809 3. Dutch doors shall have concealed flush-bolt locking devices to interlock the upper and
7810 lower halves.

7811

7812 **4104.2 Strike plate installations.** In wood-frame construction, any open space between trimmers
7813 and wood doorjamb shall be solid-shimmed by a single piece extending not less than 6 inches
7814 (152.4 mm) above and below the strike plate.

7815

7816 Strike plates shall be attached to wood with not less than two No. 8 by 2-inch (50.8 mm) screws.
7817 Strike plates when attached to metal shall be attached with not less than two No. 8 machine screws.

7818

7819 **4104.3 Hinges.** Hinges that are exposed to the exterior shall be equipped with nonremovable hinge
7820 pins or a mechanical interlock to preclude removal of the door from the exterior by removing the
7821 hinge pins.

7822

7823 **4104.4 Locking hardware.** Single swinging doors and the active leaf of double doors shall be
7824 equipped with an approved exterior key-operated dead bolt which shall lock with a minimum bolt
7825 throw of 1 inch (25.4 mm) through a metal strike plate. When mounted on an exit door or a required
7826 emergency escape or rescue door, the dead bolt lock shall be operable from the inside without the
7827 use of a key or any special knowledge or effort. See Chapter 10 for other exit door requirements.

7828

7829

SECTION 4105 WINDOWS AND SLIDING DOORS

7830

7831

7832 **4105.1 General requirements.** When regulated by this chapter, openable windows and sliding
7833 door assemblies shall be secured by a primary lock or sash operator and by either of the following:

7834

7835 1. A secondary locking device consisting of screws, dowels, pinning devices or key-operated
7836 locks designed to prevent opening by lifting or prying.

7837

7838 2. Approved bars, grilles or grates.

7839

7840 Jalousie or louvered windows do not comply with this section unless protected with approved
7841 bars, grilles or grates. Installation of secondary locking devices or bars, grilles or grates on required

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7842 emergency escape windows or doors shall comply with Section 1030.4.
7843

7844 SECTION 4106 7845 GARAGE DOORS 7846

7847 4106.1 General requirements. Vehicle access doors in enclosed attached garages shall be
7848 equipped with a security device or locking devices.
7849

7850 SECTION 4107 7851 ALTERNATE MATERIALS OR METHODS 7852

7853 4107.1 General. The provisions of this chapter are not intended to prevent the use of any material,
7854 device, hardware or method not specifically prescribed in this chapter, when such alternate
7855 provides equivalent security and is approved by the *building official*.”

7856 Carryover Dallas Amendment

7857 **173. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter**
7858 **42, “Unity Agreements and the Dissolution of Common Boundary Lines for Building Code**
7859 **Purposes,” to read as follows:**

7860 “CHAPTER 42 7861 UNITY AGREEMENTS AND THE DISSOLUTION OF COMMON 7862 BOUNDARY LINES FOR BUILDING CODE PURPOSES 7863

7864 SECTION 4201 7865 AUTHORIZATION AND REQUIREMENTS FOR UNITY AGREEMENTS 7866

7867 4201.1 Authorization. The *building official* may authorize the use of a unity agreement between
7868 two or more building sites to include the reservation of additional *yard* space on an adjacent Building
7869 Site for purposes of this code if a written agreement is executed in accordance with this section on
7870 a form provided by the city.
7871

7872 **Exception:** The *building official* may authorize the use of a unity agreement for purposes of this
7873 code without the execution of a written unity agreement when the city is an owner or lessee of
7874 all of the property involved.
7875

7876 4201.1.1 Creation of a building site. The unity agreement may not be used to create a building
7877 site nor as a substitute for platting or replatting as required by the *Dallas Development Code*.
7878 This agreement shall not be used to allow buildings or portions thereof to encroach across the
7879 property line nor into the adjacent lot.
7880

7881 4201.1.2 Newly created building site and existing buildings. Property lines cannot be
7882 created unless the structures are compliant or will be made compliant with the requirements of
7883 this code following the permit requirements of Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures for the

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7884 Construction Codes,” of the *Dallas City Code*. A property line proposed through an existing
7885 building must result in functionally independent structures on each side of the property line.
7886 This includes structural load paths as well as all other requirements of this code including exits
7887 and restrooms.
7888

7889 **4201.1.3 Single-family uses.** A site inspection is required prior to the submission of the unity
7890 agreement for the building official’s signature. The inspection must verify the existence of the
7891 designated minimum yard on the adjacent lot.”
7892

7893 **4201.2 Requirements.** A unity agreement shall meet all of the following requirements:
7894

- 7895 1. Contain legal descriptions of the properties sharing the common boundary lines.
7896
- 7897 2. Set forth adequate consideration between the parties.
7898
- 7899 3. State that all parties agree that the properties sharing the common boundary lines may be
7900 collectively treated as one lot for the limited purpose of meeting requirements of this code.
7901
- 7902 4. State that the reservation of additional yard space on an adjacent Building Site described
7903 in the agreement is only for the limited purpose of meeting requirements of this code, and
7904 that actual lot lines of the Building Sites are not affected.
7905
- 7906 5. State that the agreement constitutes a covenant running with the land with respect to all
7907 properties sharing the common boundary lines. A maximum of two lots may be used per
7908 agreement.
7909
- 7910 6. State that all parties agree to defend, indemnify, and hold harmless the city of Dallas from
7911 and against all claims or liabilities arising out of or in connection with the agreement.
7912
- 7913 7. State that the agreement will be governed by the laws of the State of Texas.
7914
- 7915 8. State that the agreement may only be amended or terminated in accordance with Section
7916 4202.
7917
- 7918 9. Be approved by the *building official* and be approved as to form by the city attorney.
7919
- 7920 10. Be signed by all owners of the properties sharing the common boundary lines.
7921
- 7922 11. Be signed by all lienholders, other than taxing entities, that have either an interest in the
7923 properties sharing the common boundary lines or an improvement on those properties.
7924
- 7925 12. Be filed and made a part of the deed records of the county or counties in which the
7926 properties are located.
7927

7928 **4201.3 Filing requirements.** A unity agreement is not effective until a true and correct copy of

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7929 the approved agreement is filed in the deed records in accordance with Section 4201.2(12), a file-
7930 marked copy of the agreement(s) for each property sharing the common boundary line is filed with
7931 the *building official*, and the fees are paid in accordance with this section.
7932

7933 **4201.3.1 Fees.** An application for a unity agreement and the amendment or termination of an
7934 existing unity agreement will not be processed until the fee(s) have been paid in accordance
7935 with Section 303 of Chapter 52, “Administrative Procedures for the Construction Codes,” of
7936 the *Dallas City Code*.
7937

7938 **SECTION 4202** 7939 **AMENDMENT OR TERMINATION OF UNITY AGREEMENTS**

7940
7941 **4202.1 Requirements.** A unity agreement may only be amended or terminated by a written
7942 instrument that is executed in accordance with this section on a form provided by the city. The
7943 instrument shall meet all of the following requirements:
7944

- 7945 1. Be signed by an owner of property sharing the common boundary lines or by a lienholder,
7946 other than a taxing entity, that has either an interest in a property sharing the common
7947 boundary lines or an improvement on such a property.
7948
- 7949 2. Be approved by the *building official*.
7950
- 7951 3. Be approved as to form by the city attorney.
7952
- 7953 4. Be filed and made a part of the deed records of the county or counties in which the
7954 properties are located.
7955

7956 **4202.2 Approval by building official.** The *building official* shall approve an instrument amending
7957 or terminating an agreement if all properties governed by the agreement fully comply with this
7958 code. The amending or terminating instrument is not effective until it is filed in the deed records in
7959 accordance with Section 4201.3 and a file-marked copy of the agreement(s) for each of the
7960 properties is filed with the *building official*.”
7961

7962 **Carryover Dallas Amendment**

7963 **174. The 2021 International Building Code is amended by adding a new Chapter**
7964 **43, “Green Building Program,” to read as follows:**

7965 **“CHAPTER 43** 7966 **GREEN BUILDING PROGRAM** 7967

7968 **SECTION 4301** 7969 **PURPOSE**

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

7970 **4301.1 Purpose.** The purpose of this chapter is to establish green building standards to help reduce
7971 the use of natural resources, create a healthier and more sustainable living environment and
7972 minimize the negative environmental impacts of development in Dallas and the North Texas
7973 region.
7974

SECTION 4302 **DEFINITIONS**

7975
7976
7977
7978 **4302.1 Definitions.** The following terms used in this chapter shall have the meanings indicated in
7979 this section:
7980

7981 **GREEN BUILDING.** Structures and their surrounding landscapes designed, constructed and
7982 maintained to decrease energy and water usage and costs, to improve the efficiency and longevity
7983 of building systems and to decrease the burdens imposed on the environment and public health.
7984

7985 **GREEN BUILT TEXAS.** An initiative of the Homebuilders Association of Greater Dallas that
7986 provides climate-specific guidelines and verification systems for residential and multifamily *green*
7987 *buildings.*
7988

7989 **GREEN BUILT TEXAS-CERTIFIABLE.** A proposed project that is not required to be
7990 registered with the Home Builders Association of Greater Dallas, but is planned, designed and
7991 constructed to meet or exceed a certified rating using the most recent version of the *Green Built*
7992 *Texas* rating system.
7993

7994 **LEED.** The Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design *green building* rating systems are
7995 nationally accepted standards for *green buildings* developed by the *USGBC.*
7996

7997 **LEED-CERTIFIABLE.** A proposed project that is not required to be registered with the *USGBC,*
7998 but is planned, designed and constructed to meet or exceed a certified rating using the most recent
7999 version of LEED NC (new construction), LEED CS (core and shell), LEED CI (commercial
8000 interiors), LEED for schools, LEED for healthcare, LEED for retail or LEED for homes.
8001

8002 **PROPOSED PROJECT.** The erection of any new structure for which a person, firm or
8003 corporation is required to obtain a building permit.
8004

8005 **USGBC.** The U.S. Green Building Council, a nonprofit organization comprised of leaders from
8006 the building industry formed to encourage sustainability by promoting buildings that are
8007 environmentally responsible, profitable and healthy places to live and work.
8008

SECTION 4303 **REQUIREMENTS**

8009
8010
8011
8012 **4303.1 General.** This section applies to all *proposed projects.*
8013

8014 **4303.2 All new construction.** All *proposed projects* must:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

8015 1. meet the minimum requirements of the *Dallas Green Construction Code*;
8016

8017 2. be *LEED-certifiable*;
8018

8019 3. be *Green Built Texas-certifiable*; or
8020

8021 4. be certifiable under an equivalent *green building* standard.
8022

8023 **4303.2.1 Formal certification not required.** Formal certification by the *USGBC, Green Built*
8024 *Texas* or an equivalent entity is not required.
8025

8026 **4303.2.2 LEED projects.**
8027

8028 1. Each *proposed project* may apply for compliance under any of the following *LEED*
8029 *rating system products: LEED NC (new construction), LEED for schools, LEED for*
8030 *retail, LEED for healthcare, LEED CS (core and shell) or LEED for homes.*
8031

8032 2. *Proposed projects* must achieve 1 point under the water efficiency credit titled “*Water*
8033 *Use Reduction (20% Reduction).*
8034

8035 **4303.2.3 Multifamily developments.** Multifamily developments have the option of using
8036 *LEED NC, LEED for homes, Green Built Texas, ICC 700* or an equivalent *green building*
8037 *standard.*
8038

8039 **4303.3 Water use.** *Proposed projects* must reduce water usage by 20 percent. This may be
8040 accomplished by:
8041

8042 1. using the water efficiency requirements of *Green Built Texas, LEED NC, LEED CS, LEED*
8043 *CI, LEED for schools, LEED for healthcare or LEED for retail; or*
8044

8045 2. using 20 percent less water than the water use baseline calculated for the building’s total
8046 interior water fixture use as required by the *Dallas Plumbing Code.*”
8047

8048 175. **Appendices A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O of the 2021 International**
8049 **Building Code are not adopted.**

8050 176. All chapters of the **2021** International Building Code adopted by this ordinance are
8051 subchapters of Chapter 53 of the Dallas City Code, as amended.

8052 177. All references in the **2021** International Building Code to the fire code, plumbing
8053 code, mechanical code, electrical code, residential code, existing building code, energy
8054

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

8055 conservation code, fuel gas code, and green construction code refer, respectively, to Chapters 16,
8056 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, and 61 of the Dallas City Code.

8057 SECTION 2. Any errata corrections of the **2021** International Building Code published by
8058 the International Code Council are considered as part of this code.

8059 SECTION 3. That a person violating a provision of this ordinance, upon conviction, is
8060 punishable by a fine not to exceed \$2,000. No offense committed and no liability, penalty, or
8061 forfeiture, either civil or criminal, incurred prior to the effective date of this ordinance will be
8062 discharged or affected by this ordinance. Prosecutions and suits for such offenses, liabilities,
8063 penalties, and forfeitures may be instituted, and causes of action pending on the effective date of
8064 this ordinance may proceed, as if the former laws applicable at the time the offense, liability,
8065 penalty, or forfeiture was committed or incurred had not been amended, repealed, reenacted, or
8066 superseded, and all former laws will continue in effect for these purposes.

8067 SECTION 4. That Chapter 53 of the Dallas City Code, as amended, will remain in full
8068 force and effect, save and except as amended by this ordinance. Any existing structure, system,
8069 development project, or registration that is not required to come into compliance with a
8070 requirement of this ordinance will be governed by the requirement as it existed in the former law
8071 last applicable to the structure, system, development project, or registration, and all former laws
8072 will continue in effect for this purpose.

8073 SECTION 5. That the terms and provisions of this ordinance are severable and are
8074 governed by Section 1-4 of Chapter 1 of the Dallas City Code, as amended.

8075 SECTION 6. That this ordinance will take effect on **[DATE]**, and it is accordingly so
8076 ordained.

8077 APPROVED AS TO FORM:

PUBLIC COMMENT VERSION-October 1, 2022

8078 [NAME], City Attorney

8079

8080 By _____

8081 Assistant City Attorney

8082

8083

8084 Passed _____